

呼ばれた



井戸正善

illustration : lack

殺戮者

S u m m o n e d S l a u g h t e r III

Summoned Slaughterer

Arc 9 - Arc 11

by Ido Masayoshi

[Novel Updates](#)

Translation Group: [Infinite Novel
Translations](#)

Epub: [Trollo WN/LN EPUB](#)

Arc 9: There is Cultural Exchange because Peace is in Sight

Chapter 67: As Long As You Love Me

The king of Horant, Suprangel, chose to calm down the uproar outside and within the castle. He declared peace and reconciliation because of the negotiations with the feudal lord Hifumi Tohno of the Fokalore territory within Orsongrande.

The details of those negotiations were:

“Monetary reparations concerning the damages done by Horant.”

“Initiation of direct magic tools trade with Fokalore as well as Orsongrande by Horant’s royal family without passing through Vichy.”

“The permission of Fokalore’s soldiers to be stationed within the domain of Horant.”

These three agreements were playing a leading role.

Especially the third point, not only was it unheard-of in history for a foreign army to be stationed within another country, but the opposing voices of the domestic nobles against Suprangel were strong. However, the king disregarded those.

“It will only be beneficial to Orsongrande”, Horant’s nobles ground their teeth out of vexation, but there was a problem of the other royal family members not having enough ability to oppose the king after Veldore’s death.

Of course that didn’t mean that Suprangel happily swallowed those

terms.

Even now, while listening to the talks of the nobles, who insisted in their stinging dissenting views in the name of remonstrating him with 「What insolence」, he recalled the conversation with Hifumi.

“You are asking me to place your troops in my country... ?” (Suprangel)

With the audience hall being in a desolate state because of the terrible scene of corpses being scattered all over, the two carried out their negotiations in another room that had been prepared.

In normal cases, there is a lot of importance attached to formality such as seating order, but since it was a discussion between the king and a single noble it became a conversation of both sitting on an equal level this time.

“That’s only natural. Though we will teach you how to fight, it will be pointless if it’s only 1 or 2 soldiers.” (Hifumi)

“Though I think that the compensation and the direct trade can’t be avoided...” (Suprangel)

“At the beginning.” (Hifumi)

Not making himself quite clear, Hifumi muttered towards the king while entrusting his back to the chair and looking up to the ceiling.

“I’m curious, won’t it create a situation of different small warlords rivalling with each other within the noble’s consul, if the political centre of Horant is destroyed and a large amount of the populace becomes rootless? I wondered whether I should do such experiment, but...” (Hifumi)

He says an outrageous thing with a serious look.

“However it would be too wasteful to lose the technology of magic tools due to that. There is the problem with the sense of pain and ego vanishing, but the body enhancement was good. If that sort of technology spreads even more, the killing will become a lot more enjoyable. It should also cause an effect of thinking about war more deeply in various ways.”
(Hifumi)

“We will arrive at that place in the end.” (Suprangel)

“Of course”, Hifumi laughs.

“I was transferred here from another world against my will by the idiots of Orsongrande. I planned to go on a rampage a little bit as I had to hold back so long, but there was a lot less resistance than I imagined.”
(Hifumi)

“Another world... ?” (Suprangel)

“Imeraria called it summoning magic. It seems to be an ancient technique, however I don't know about it quite well. I was forcibly summoned from another country by that spell. If you feel like it, it's alright to exchange blows with the royal family of Orsongrande due to that.” (Hifumi)

“That is... I will pass on that. Even if I said something now, it wouldn't amount to much more than a loser's whining. However, aren't you denying the possibility of Horant going to war against Orsongrande?”
(Suprangel)

“No, it's a standpoint of recommending the opposite. If it reaches the point that people use their heads, the battles will become as long and violent as possible. I didn't tell you add the provision of being non-aggressive towards Orsongrande for a reason. That's how it is.” (Hifumi)

There was no need for Suprangel to say anything else anymore. He doesn't know how soon that man would devour the country once again if he doesn't finish the conference quickly and settle down the internal affairs somehow.

While making a civil official take notes, they worked out the details of the drawn up official document. Both of them signed two versions each and kept one for themselves.

With this they concluded the unprecedented peace between a single noble's territory and a whole country.



“Somehow we were welcomed with an amazing vigour.” (Alyssa)

“It's likely the king's instigation. His soldiers probably decreased considerably. They might not want to risk even skirmishes, to say nothing of a war, until they have reorganised their army to some extent.” (Hifumi)

Incidentally, as he left the castle, he was joined by Alyssa who caught up.

Although the negotiations advanced at a considerable speed within their limitations, they mostly haven't encountered any enemies, let alone even an outstanding opposition. On the contrary, once they got closer to the capital, a messenger welcomed them and told them the end result.

Alyssa's group, which had intended to open hostilities upon coming into contact with the enemy, got completely discouraged.

“Origa already started the aforementioned strategy. As it had been decided that we will train the soldiers of this country for the time being, I will have you, together with the lot you brought along, stay here and drill them. The period is half a year.” (Hifumi)

“For half a year!?” (Alyssa)

“I plan to start the next step in around that time.” (Hifumi)

Hifumi says while scribbling on some kind of document. Alyssa tilted her head to the side.

“Next?” (Alyssa)

“Right, next. Because I will make sure to have Horant, Orsongrande and Vichy approach a pleasant standstill, soldiers of various places will be trained during that time. After that I will somehow give them a trigger.”
(Hifumi)

Alyssa quietly sighed due to Hifumi laughing innocently.

“I leave the methods of drilling to you. Alyssa will occasionally return to the territory. While at it, we will also replace the lot stationed here. It’s also necessary to have similar training in Vichy and the other territories.”
(Hifumi)

“It will become busy, eh?” (Alyssa)

“Yea, but it will also become a lot more fun. ... Alyssa.” (Hifumi)

“What?” (Alyssa)

“There’s no particular necessity to continue doing the unreasonable. It’s also unnecessary to feel gratitude. I was able to enjoy Vichy plentifully.”
(Hifumi)

“Do I seem to be that worn out?” After Alyssa inclines her head to the side, she laughs with her whole face.

“Gratitude, eh? I also followed Hifumi-san intending to repay the favour at the beginning, but now that’s not it. Seeing various cities in various countries, looking at an unknown world and talking with companions I’m getting along with is fun.” (Alyssa)

Alyssa’s eyes were suddenly filled with tears.

“That’s why I’m together with Hifumi-san. At the time of going through

a bitter experience in Vichy, I thought about wanting to die, but since it's this much fun right now, I consider it to be fine as it is." (Alyssa)

"Please treat me well", when Alyssa bowed, Hifumi tapped her shoulder while smiling as well.

"I see. It's fine to do what you like as long as you enjoy it. It's your life after all." (Hifumi)

"Uh huh. It's a blessing if you can do what you like." (Alyssa)

"Yes, that's right... Eep." (Hifumi)

Once Hifumi raised his look, he saw the soldiers of Fokalore chewing their handkerchiefs behind Alyssa while spilling tears of gratitude. Their resounding, sobbing voices were similar to the wails reputed to be heard from the entrance to hell.

"Director! I will accompany you for the rest of my life as well!" (Soldier)

"Please tell us anything! We will do our utmost to fulfil your wishes!" (Soldier)

"Yea, best regards from now on too!" (Alyssa)

Watching the soldiers answer in one voice to call of Alyssa, Hifumi secretly left the place wondering since when those guys had become this disgusting. (T/N: Lol) He hastened his return for the sake of creating the next place of conflict.



The first task of Vaiya, who became the vice-captain of the new Royal

Knight Order, was to proceed towards Fokalore. It had been decided he would carry out negotiations before involving Phyrinion.

It's about a request to instruct the knight order as well as the national armed forces.

Being the initiator and an acquaintance of Hifumi, Sabnak has assisted in the guarding of the former soldiers of Horant on their travel to Fokalore before returning to the royal castle. He also had the national task to make sure they arrive with his own eyes.

Along the way he, alongside the accompanying soldier of the national army, participated in the training of Fokalore's soldiers.

Excluding Vaiya, who participated several times, the soldiers of the national army only inclined their heads to the side in doubt whether the unfamiliar training regime had any effect.

However, in addition to the merit of hunting during journeys, the Fokalore soldiers killed a bandit group, they encountered by chance, by themselves while the national army was confused. Due to them displaying conspicuous fighting strength, the national army's soldiers improved by imitating their training.

And before long they arrived at Fokalore.

“On top of the attendants having increased considerably, the person in charge is absent...” (Caim)

Caim expressionlessly muttered a few words as if being fed up. Splitting the soldiers, who came from Horant to immigrate, into groups and assigning accommodations, he quickly broke up the soldiers and had staff members guide them.

The staff and territorial soldiers, who were instructed without delay, began to move without any particular disorder. The soldier, who was chosen to explain the state of affairs to Miyukare, dropped his shoulders, feeling to have drawn the short end of the stick as it was apparent that Miyukare would be displeased about Alyssa not returning, and walked away.

Vaiya, who was rolled up in that skilled performance, is guided to Phyrinion by Brokkra.

Being guided and entering the feudal lord's mansion, Vaiya showed

interest in its structure.

The neatly cleaned-up first floor is completely a public space. There is a clerk on standby at the information desk to give easy-to-understand guidance. A row of counters is lining up in a clear order for all kinds of reports. The residents are quietly talking in the meeting space. It's rather busy with people like apparently newly-wed who are exchanging information with fellow couples and people, who are reminiscing with others that lost their relatives as well.

“This is amazing...” (Vaiya)

Brokkra explained in detail as Vaiya was taken aback.

“All of this is following the teachings of Lord-sama. Each of the staff members, with the exception of us 5 civil official slaves, has their own individual role and it had been established that they use the pre-set format as well. They are managing everything like the occupation, family structure and address of the inhabitants.” (Brokkra)

“Address?” (Vaiya)

Vaiya posed a question hearing an unknown word.

“Beginning with this city, there is a manager and a name for each block of the cities and villages Lord-sama controls. And since all buildings have a number added to them, it has reached the point that any building is defined by its block's name and number. The delivery service, that begun as private organisation, is using that as well.” (Brokkra)

“What a...” (Vaiya)

Vaiya can't hide his shock due to them being able to organise things and people in a way even the capital can't. At the time of realising that there were a lot of things he should study besides military affairs, he regretted to not have brought along even more of the other knights as well.

The office, used by Phyrinion, is on the second floor of the mansion. Usually there are people coming and going without interruption, but now that an envoy of the royal castle has come, the flow of people had been stopped temporarily.

Once Brokkra knocked on the door, Krinola came over and opened it. As they enter, Phyrinion stands up to welcome them.

“Welcome. Although we’ve heard about the envoy from the royal castle, I hope you can accept me, Phyrinion el Amazelotto, as representative.”
(Phyrinion)

Since the moment he looked at the slightly tired expression of the smiling Phyrinion, Vaiya couldn’t avert his eyes from Phyrinion. Her soft, green and lush wavy hair and her brightly glittering orange pupils. Noticing his own leering at her smiling lips, Vaiya turned away his look in a fluster.

“Is anything wrong?” (Phyrinion)

“N-No! Please excuse me!” (Vaiya)

Vaiya, who unintentionally ends up using a loud voice, sits down urged by their reception while blushing. Brokkra tells them that his next official duty is waiting for him and leaves.

“I’m the vice-captain of the newly established Royal Knight Order, Vaiya Zuellen. (T/N: Tsue~ren)” (Vaiya)

Given that his face heated up once he looked at her face, he greeted her while looking slightly downwards, but as he was wearing the uniform of the knight order which attracts attention, his face flushed all the more.

“Royal Knight Order?” (Phyrinion)

Phyrinion involuntarily knitted her brows due to the unfamiliar expression.

“Though it is disgraceful, it’s an incomplete knight order that still has a bit work left to do as organisation as it was just founded the other day. The captain is Sabnak-dono, who hails from the Third Knight Order just like you. It’s likely that he is just about now returning to the capital almost as if replacing me.” (Vaiya)

“He is... By the way, you know about me belonging to the Third Knight Order?” (Phyrinion)

“I was told various things by Sabnak-dono before leaving Münster. Since you are probably experiencing hardships as his replacement, he wants to help you if he gets a chance to do so.” (Vaiya)

Vaiya pretended to not notice her instantaneous angry expression due to Sabnak’s verbal message. Rather than that, he is embarrassed to have become more talkative than usual without hurrying up the talks at all.

“Looks like various things have happened in the royal castle.” (Phyrinion)

“Yes, both, the First and Second, Knight Orders have been dissolved. Earl Tohno has played a great part in that.” (Vaiya)

Vaiya explained the situation as far as he knew himself to Phyrinion.

Although there were various things he wanted to be taught from now on, he planned to tell Phyrinion all of the news without being concerned about them being highly classified information.

The war with Horant, the matter of Hifumi marching into Horant, the prince’s death and the princess’ decision. Phyrinion silently listened to all of the topics.

“... Thank you very much. The world is changing at an outrageous speed. Even the incomprehensible common sense of the original lord of

this territory, I was able to realise it once again.” (Phyrinion)

Choosing this timing, Krinola exchanged the completely cooled-down black tea. Stealing a fleeting glance at Vaiya’s face during the time of placing the cups, she almost unintentionally burst into laughter. She is wondering why her own master doesn’t realise the state of the male in front of her.

“And? You surely haven’t expressly accompanied the travel of the defeated soldiers from Horant for the sake of reporting the state of things this time, right?” (Phyrinion)

“Yes, of course not. Though I also ascertained the immigrants from Horant with my own eyes, the real issue for me to come here is to convey a request from the royal castle.” (Vaiya)

“From the royal castle? Are the contents intended for my ears?” (Phyrinion)

Phyrinion made sure whether it was fine to not wait for Hifumi to return, but even grasping that, Vaiya does nothing more but continuing the prior discussion.

“Of course I’m well aware that the final decision will rest with the feudal lord. However, judging from Earl Tohno’s character, he makes prompt decisions if possible. Before that I planned to request a prior examination whether or not it will be possible.” (Vaiya)

Certainly there is also the possibility of Hifumi deciding during his stay at the royal castle, but at any rate it might be different if there is or isn’t a preparatory phase.

“If that’s what this is about, I will listen to your story.” (Phyrinion)

“Fokalore’s feudal army’s state of being undefeated, we came to the conclusion that the secret of their strength lies in the content of their training regimen. Therefore, because there won’t be a problem in borrowing a few soldiers from the feudal army, we are planning to request

them to coach the national army.” (Vaiya)

“With such kind of talk, it’s even fine to talk to the civil official slaves about it. There’s probably no one as well-informed about this territory as them.” (Phyrinion)

“It’s to the degree of them knowing more than the feudal lord”, Vaiya gaze was glued to Phyrinion’s smile as she said that while laughing.

“Umm, is there something wrong?” (Phyrinion)

As expected, even Phyrinion would notice it if she was stared at with a bright right face. Though, in her case it was a feeling of wondering whether she had said anything offending in this situation.

At last noticing that he was watching her in fascination due to being called, Vaiya averted his gaze while stroking his cheeks in panic.

“E-Excuse me! Just, seeing... your beaut... y...” (Vaiya)

Vaiya doesn’t make eye contact with Phyrinion realising the meaning of those words after finishing them.

Even Phyrinion ended up hanging her head in shame with a bright red face thanks to the unforeseen words.

“Umm... thank you very much...” (Phyrinion)

After squeezing out words of thanks a few times, both of them ended up silently looking downwards with red faces.

Krinola, who left the room quietly, got enthusiastic about reporting this to Phyrinion’s family’s home, the Amazelotto household.

Chapter 68: Come Together

Once Imeraria finished reading the delivered report, she sat down on a nearby chair.

“I-Imeraria-sama!?” (Maid)

She raised her hand to rein in the maid who rushed over from the side, she was standing at the ready, in a panic.

“I’m alright. I only felt a bit tired.” (Imeraria)

With a frail smile she ordered the prime minister to be summoned and read over the report once again.

“Something like forming a treaty between a nation and noble’s territory... This is something like slighting our country. Originally this would probably make him a target of disciplinary actions, but...”
(Imeraria)

If I consider the citizens as a whole, for them it will mean the opportunity to obtain cheap magic tools on top of him having defeated the enemy nation. It’s very likely they won’t comprehend what’s wrong with that, Imeraria estimates.

The report might have also reached the prime minister. Faster than she expected, there was knocking on the door to her office.

“Enter.” (Imeraria)

“As you have ordered, I have come.” (Adol)

“Though I think you’ve heard about it, it’s about Horant’s matter.”
(Imeraria)

Prime Minister Adol, having obtained Imeraria’s permission to stand at ease, told her that the report has reached him as well.

Imeraria nods.

“I also considered whether we should punish Earl Tohno, but realistically it’s probably impossible. Assuming we do something reckless, Fokalore might oppose Orsongrande... no, there might also be a not so small number of nobles supporting Hifumi-sama. The situation is that all the former Vichy territories have been annexed by Fokalore.” (Imeraria)

“I’m also agreeing with Imeraria-sama’s view.” (Adol)

“Then, it’s fine to carefully watch the situation?” (Imeraria)

“I considered whether this isn’t a good opportunity.” (Adol)

As Imeraria asked “Good opportunity?”, Adol excused himself for being presumptuous.

“It’s the long-awaited chance to hold Imeraria-sama’s coronation ceremony while at the same time celebrating Earl Tohno’s military gains. The opposing nobles won’t be able to meddle at a moment’s notice, if Earl Tohno is close by.” (Adol)

Imeraria decided to agree with this suggestion of the prime minister as good idea, but once she carefully considered Hifumi’s character, she noticed a point that should cause apprehensions.

“Won’t this turn into a situation of “being used” which he hates the most?” (Imeraria)

“It’s probably necessary to explain it in advance and get his consent. If we also prepare something to please Earl Tohno, it will be even better.”
(Adol)

Due to Adol answering pridefully, Imeraria lowered her eyebrows.

“What in the world are you planning? I already don’t want to lose anyone else thanks to thoughtlessness, however...” (Imeraria)

“You may be relieved. In my humble opinion it will be alright as long as we discuss about a proper request for Earl Tohno. To put it simple, he will participate by himself without knowing that he is being used in a disagreeable way. It will be fine if we just directly request it from him sincerely.” (Adol)

“Because it’s just at the right time where we are also asking him to coach the soldiers of the national army”, Adol said.

“If you consider him with the intention to become hostile against him, he is indeed a terrifying opponent, but if you rely on him as an ally, there won’t be anyone more reliable either.” (Adol)

Imeraria closed her eyes to think about Adol’s words.

“... Understood. We will use your plan, prime minister. However, I will be the one to directly talk with Hifumi-sama about the request. Please tell the knight order to invite Hifumi to this place once he enters the capital.”
(Imeraria)

“As you wish.” (Adol)

Adol, who hang his head deeply, got teary eyes.

“And, I congratulate Imeraria-sama from the bottom of my heart for the succession of the throne.” (Adol)

Even though Imeraria realises his trembling voice, she shows a whiff of a smile.

“In one way or another it caused you to worry, eh? Please support me from now on as well, okay?” (Imeraria)

“At your command!” (Adol)

For a short while Adol wasn't able to raise his face.



Hifumi, who swiftly finished up this and that in Horant, mounted the horse, he had Suprangel concede to him, and already came back as far as the national border of Orsongrande to Horant.

He left the territorial army heading towards Fokalore with the words “It's fine if you return while also properly doing some sightseeing.”

At first he freely travelled on the highway, but as the amount of people moving on the highway increased the closer he got to Orsongrande, he reluctantly got stuck with travelling besides the highway where it wasn't paved.

“What happened?” (Hifumi)

Almost the entire flow of people advancing on the highway is heading in the direction of Orsongrande, just like Hifumi. Using carriages and wagons, there are many people moving together with their entire families visible. Sporadically he catches sight of merchant-like people who embarked on carriages loaded with some goods.

“Say, the highway is awfully crowded. Did something happen?”
(Hifumi)

He called out to a merchant riding on a carriage close-by with the only

reason for his choice being the proximity in the height of his view.

“Ah, there is some very grave battle going on in the royal castle of Horant. I heard many soldiers have died. Since there seems to be a rich territory accepting anyone in Orsongrande, everyone is aiming to go there.” (Merchant)

Hifumi arrives at the called-out merchant even though there are many people moving around them. He is selling food and daily necessities to the masses along the road.

“Given that I’m selling my goods by moving within Horant, the right business opportunity popped up. That’s the kind of guy I am.” (Merchant)

As the density of people increases the closer it is to the border, it might be profitable for business. He answered with a pleased expression.

“I see. Thanks.” (Hifumi)

Throwing a gold coin to the merchant, Hifumi headed on.

Advancing on the highway for another two hours, there is an excessive congestion of carriages right before the border.

Because there is the danger of losing carriages or wagons if proceeding off the pavement, everyone is waiting to go ahead with a resigned expression.

“Oh, this is?” (Hifumi)

Albeit a small amount, the scent of blood came drifting from further ahead.

Instinctively the corners of Hifumi’s mouth rise.

While advancing in a hurry offside the highway, he adjusts the location of his katana hanging at his waist.

Soon the source of the congestion came in sight.

“Line up! Stand in a row!”

A man, wearing the equipment of a common soldier from Horant, is raising his voice quite loudly.

Several other people are lined up. It seems he is doing an inspection or interrogation of them one by one.

A single soldier blocked the way of Hifumi approaching on top of the horse.

“Don’t you have a strange appearance. Tell me your reason for coming here.” (Soldier)

“Before that, listen, when I passed through here a few days ago a lot like you wasn’t here, but what the hell are you doing?” (Hifumi)

“Tsk.” (Soldier)

Clicking his tongue, the soldier drew his sword.

It causes a commotion among the commoners, who were in the vicinity. Some also take a distance.

“Answer the question without nitpicking!” (Soldier)

Ignoring the yelling soldier, Hifumi watched the exchange of the group at the front. He discovered the soldier receiving money from the people there.

“Toll... eh?” (Hifumi)

“That’s right! You have to pay one silver coin if you want to pass here!” (Soldier)

Due to the soldier’s words, who doesn’t even try to hide it anymore,

Hifumi pointed at a single woman with her children.

“Hey, you. Listen to me for just a minute.” (Hifumi)

“Y-Yes.” (Woman)

“Is there a system of giving charity to dumb soldiers in this country?” (Hifumi)

“Eh? Umm, that...” (Woman)

While alternating her look between the soldier and Hifumi, the woman is puzzled what kind of answer would be good. The soldier is scary, but it seems Hifumi’s eyes are scary as well.

“You! Are you taking me for a fool!?” (Soldier)

Taking a step forward with his left foot in rage, he raised his sword overhead, but the soldier’s movement suddenly stopped.

The katana, drawn and held with the left hand in a backhand grip, is piercing the soldier’s left eye.

“Didn’t I tell you? A dumb soldier.” (Hifumi)

While saying “You should listen more closely to what people tell you”, the eyeball flies off due to Hifumi pulling out the katana and shaking the blood off it.

At the same time as the dead soldier fell, screams rose from the surroundings.

“Shut up!” (Hifumi)

Due to Hifumi's roar, the people, who tried to escape, stopped their feet as well.

The other soldiers came rushing over as well. From the fact that all of them are wearing a similar-looking leather armour, Hifumi understands that apparently are soldiers of Horant.

A single one among them stepped forward and looked at the collapsed soldier.

“... What the heck is this about?” (Soldier)

“I killed him because he came slashing at me with his drawn sword.”
(Hifumi)

He is holding the drawn katana in his right hand.

“I will ask once again, what are you doing? Though, judging by appearance, it seems there are two choices to pay money to pass through or otherwise be sent away.” (Hifumi)

“We are prohibiting the travel that hasn't been approved by either the king or a feudal lord. Only those paying the price to obtain permission can go on!” (Soldier)

Throwing out his chest as if trying to daunt him, the soldier stares at Hifumi atop his horse. In a casual manner he puts his hand on the sword at his waist.

“Permission, eeh... ?” (Hifumi)

Hifumi surveyed the uneasy looking commoners in a circle.

“However, doesn't it seem like there isn't any guy handing over such official papers? In short, I wonder if it's a story of giving a bribe? Do it

more boldly.” (Hifumi)

Hifumi, who laughed scornfully without warning, continues further on,

“So, even setting those guys aside, are you going to take money from me as well?” (Hifumi)

“Tsk. Bastard, tell me your name and aim! Whether you pass through depends on the amount of money.” (Soldier)

“If you are a citizen of Horant, it is only natural to repay us for working for the sake of the country.” Continuing to listen to the words of the soldier, Hifumi ended up being unable to contain a loud laughter.

“Ahahahaha! What bad luck! I’m not a citizen of Horant.” (Hifumi)

He took out the traffic permit signed by Imeraria from his pocket.

“I’m a noble of Orsongrande. Since I want to return to my territory, hurry up and open the way.” (Hifumi)

The soldier, who took a long hard look at the document, opened the path while shivering in anger or fluster.

Just as he reached a position, where he was surrounded by the soldier, Hifumi stopped his horse and turned his sight towards the people, who were on the highway.

“Ah, which reminds me, I’m one of the feudal lords as well. The place is known as Tohno territory which has the city Fokalore as its core, but...” (Hifumi)

The people, who heard the name Fokalore of the Tohno territory, began to suddenly get noisy. If the story of the merchant was true, they were headed towards that place.

“If you are going there, you will be welcome. As Earl Hifumi Tohno, a noble affiliated with Orsongrande, I’m approving your passage as

applicants. Of course, free of charge.” (Hifumi)

The people almost raised their voices in joy due to Hifumi, who unexpectedly proposed this matter on his own accord, however a soldier was the first to raise his voice.

“Don’t screw around! What are you pulling here as noble of a foreign country!?” (Soldier)

“However, didn’t you say any noble and any feudal lord before?” (Hifumi)

Though it is completely a sophism, it will be perfectly fitting if the goal is to provoke them, Hifumi is smiling.

“All of you, draw your swords! This guy is a criminal who only calls himself a noble!” (Soldier)

Upon those words every soldier present drew their sword.

“You drew them, eh?” (Hifumi)

Looking around by turning in a circle, Hifumi made sure that all soldiers set up their swords and muttered a single question.

Promptly jumping off the horse, he bisects a single soldier without hesitation.

While standing up, he wards off another’s sword to the side and slices him with a reverse hassou stance. (T/N: Now this one was a major pain to translate. The way he kills the soldier is a kendo move called suriage [gives a point in a kendo match], describing the motion fully is way difficult so your best choice is to watch a video or a kendo anime. The hassou no kamae is a stance of having the sword grabbed with both hands and raising it upwards at one side near the shoulder, now do the reverse and you got it... whatever that would actually mean in kendo stances) As the encirclement was broken by two soldiers having collapsed, he let the horse get away.

“Hey, if you draw, you have to slash. If you hold your weapons, you have to kill.” (Hifumi)

“Gugugu... get him!” (Soldier)

The soldier, with a deep red face, chose to have them, including himself as well, slash at Hifumi at the same time, but the outcome was something tragic.

Some have their heads sent flying, some are dumbfounded at having their bellies sliced and are staring at the sight of their own organs spilling out and some have fainted in agony due to losing their limbs...

The last remaining soldier came assaulting with his sword in total desperation, however having him drop the sword by striking its middle part with the left hand, Hifumi makes a full revolution holding the katana and cuts off the lower part of the soldier's right arm.

“Aguu...” (Soldier)

While shedding large quantities of blood from his arms, the fallen soldier before long dies of blood loss.

The people, who saw the entire spectacle unfold, are looking at Hifumi with completely frightened facial expressions.

“Good grief...” (Hifumi)

At the time he put his katana back into its scabbard after wiping it with a paper, the soldier, who had his arm loped off, died.

“Because my area's territorial soldiers will come here a few days later, it's fine for you talk to them if you feel like it. Rather than those fellows, they will treat you properly, probably.” (Hifumi)

Hifumi, who found the horse that had come back, ran up to the horse in

joy and gently brushed it. Once he nimbly mounted it, he quickly went his way.

While the people, ending up not having to pay any money, don't comprehend what has just happened, they pull themselves together and continue walking.



“Am I fated to be chased by work no matter where I go... ?” (Sabnak)

If it was to be like this, it would have been alright to rest at the place of brother-in-law for a bit longer, Sabnak lamented in his newly provided office within the king's castle.

At the same time as Sabnak returned to the capital, an official ceremony was held for the first founding of the Royal Knight Order due to Imeraria's coronation. The captain was Sabnak and the vice-captain was Vaiya. Several people were chosen from each, the Second and Third Knight Order.

Consolidating all the remaining knights, those were reshuffled into an organisation that was merely called knight order. The former captain of the Third Knight Order, Lotomago, was appointed as its captain and there were three vice-captains including Midas.

There is no hierarchical relationship between the two knight orders. The main duty of the Royal Knight Order is the protection of the royalty as well as the castle. The knight order leads the army to maintain the public order and for military activities.

Having been appointed in a hurry, Sabnak was dressed in the new order's uniform that was handed to him by Imeraria herself. The first assigned task for him is to draft and practise the security protocol of the coming coronation ceremony. It was major task.

“Why is there so much work?” (Sabnak)

Having dispatched Phyrinion to the Fokalore territory as my replacement, I feel relieved in my heart, but being responsible for that side might have been better if it's like this, he clearly judges.

At any rate, since it is a fresh unit that has been formed just recently, let alone cooperation, the order's members just finished meeting their comrades. No matter how much Imeraria is the only protection subject, I can't help but feel there will security holes in this wide royal castle and its surroundings even if I wrack my brain devising a plan.

“Excuse me.” (Maid)

The one to enter the office was the new maid, who was assigned to Sabnak.

“A letter has arrived from Royal Knight Order Vice-Captain Vaiya.”
(Maid)

“Ah, thanks.” (Sabnak)

The given letter was a rolled up parchment having a thorough wax seal.

“What!? Such exaggeration...” (Sabnak)

While tearing off the wax and reading the contents, Sabnak spilled tears.

The letter from Vaiya states that while waiting for Hifumi in Fokalore following Imeraria's instruction, there are requests from other fiefs flooding in to train their soldiers and educate their civil officials. He lightly and in a comprehensible way writes that even the former Vichy territories are in the process of switching over to the same political system as Fokalore. At the end he wrote to report about the “Engagement to Phyrinion-san” to report about it to his superior officer, Sabnak.

“What the hell is this? Though I’m not able to enjoy food and women as I’m busily running about...” (Sabnak)

“Captain-sama.” (Maid)

“Isn’t this way of calling me weird? So, what is it?” (Sabnak)

As he asks while holding a handkerchief to his eyes, the maid says expressionlessly,

“If you like, you can join me for dinner?” (Maid)

“... Won’t you stop it, if it’s out of pity?” (Sabnak)

“No, it isn’t.” (Maid)

This maid is outrageous, he shook his head.

“I just wondered whether this was a chance to gain money and power by marrying a rich and powerful man.” (Maid)

Sabnak cried. (T/N: Owned, lol)



Chapter 69: My Way

Next to the feudal lord's mansion in Fokalore there is a large second residence built by the previous feudal lord. His lovers and the servants lived there. Currently it is functioning as staff's dormitory.

Since there were rooms left, it was decided that the unmarried aspirants desiring to work as staff among the group of immigrants from Horant will live there temporarily. Because it's the staff's dormitory to begin with, they are provided with three meals per day in the dining hall.

In addition, those wanting to join the feudal army will enter the dormitories for families and singles of the territorial troops. Those hoping for employment and those, who possessed skills in carpentry and blacksmithing, were moved to inns in the whole town and dormitories for the pupils of craftsmen.

The people, who chose the path of becoming a staff member, were given a probation for studying first.

It's quite different from the image they had of the territory's circumstances, but currently Fokalore is becoming a cutting-edge training centre in this world, let alone within the country.

Including even those who have left the alienated Vichy, where education is compulsory, there are many people like the sons of the coming and going merchants and those who are working as civil officials in the neighbouring cities and other noble's fiefs, who are gathering in Fokalore for "studying abroad" to receive education.

In addition to learning the basics in what is called advancing through a set curriculum, there was a charm in being taught anything without reserves concerning the territorial administration of Fokalore, which has accomplished a successful expansion.

Even with only this education service, the Tohno territory's operation budget is profiting quite a bit.

Although the population is growing, the staff members got used to handling the citizen's information and the registration in the family register. Rather, the situation has begun to settle down within the mansion of the feudal lord. Although the immigrants from Horant caused

some temporary noise, it reached the point that the staff could take a little vacation, even including the civil official slaves.

There is one person that doesn't find such situation amusing.

“Recently the opportunities to build remarkably interesting things vanished.” (Prufas)

As group leader of the development team the dwarf Prufas hadn't even the time to sleep for an hour. Nowadays they are building office supplies like tables and chairs. They bid farewell to the calm days where they could leisurely drink sake.

“Something interesting?” (Vaiya)

His conversation partner was Vaiya.

Participating in the training of the feudal army in the beginning, he asked Miyukare, who is the person in charge of military affairs, to teach him the management of troops and the unique way of thinking to implement three man cells within the ranks, but he ended up being driven away by her, who was extremely displeased over being separated from Alyssa.

There was also the matter of the place being a room within the lord's mansion.

“Guys, who are emitting an aura of happiness, should just leave!”
(Miyukare)

This shout of Miyukare became a famous saying handed down amongst the staff on the second floor.

Contributing to the increasing number of couples between the single staff members appearing, Miyukare has completely solidified her position as “Court Lady-sama” with those few words.

“Now that you mention it, the wagons and spear throwers, used by the feudal army, apparently were developed here.” (Vaiya)

“We built them, but the idea came from the Lord. The platform wagons were wagons with wheels attached for travelling within the territory having the name rail car at the beginning.” (Prufas)

“They didn’t run well and were terrible.” Prufas laughs while gulping down the sake he held in one hand.

“We build this and that. There were also things that couldn’t be used as weapons at all. There is the collapsible fan called “Folding Fan.” Did you see them being sold as souvenirs in Fokalore? That thing is something we originally tried to make out of wood as a trial at the time we produced the iron-ribbed fan Origa-jou-chan possesses. Though it was the Lord who gave it its name.” (Prufas)

The more he heard, the less Vaiya could understand the character called Hifumi. Before he noticed it, he was making a troubled face. Prufas laughs.

“What are you making such weird face for? If you want to know about Lord-sama, you simply have to ask Origa-jou-chan. Though she hasn’t returned yet.” (Prufas)

“I see...” (Vaiya)

“Putting that aside, you are a knight-sama, aren’t you? If you are curious, there are spares of the weapons Lord-sama uses. Do you want to have a look?” (Prufas)

“Is that alright?” (Vaiya)

Seeing Vaiya saying this delightfully, Prufas became happy as well.

“Aye, you can say it’s fine because we are steadily receiving requests to produce weapons from Lord-sama. I won’t mind you taking some with

you, if you are pleased with them.” (Prufas)

Prufas, who stood up, took Vaiya and moved to the testing room, that also functioned as storage, which existed within the work room.

The testing room, with its wide, bare ground, has countless weapons and kimonos lined up on one wall. Most of them are made out of wood and iron, but there are also items with unknown materials on the right side that might have monster materials within.

“This is amazing. I have never seen something like this, even not at the training field of the knight order. Can I also hold them?” (Vaiya)

“Of course.” (Prufas)

The first thing Vaiya held after receiving permission was the kusarigama. After gazing at the sickle, he intently stares at its chains and the counterweights with their pointed ends with great interest.

“A strangely formed... weapon, is it?” (Vaiya)

“Seems so. I repaired it several times, however it was interesting at the time I was shown the place where it was used for testing.” (Prufas)

Though he had heard about the way to use it, it was said that you could swing the end part of the chain, hit with its weight, cut with the sickle and throw and pull with it. Vaiya wasn't able to understand most of it.

Furthermore, beginning with the suntetsu and sansetsukon and arriving at the tokko and caltrop, he couldn't imagine how to use those.

Because Prufas was able to explain about the shuriken and the jitte for enforcing orders and regulations, Vaiya earnestly and carefully listened to him without missing anything. He tried to throw the shuriken several times to test it.

“Such small and hand-held weapon with high adaptability is great. It can be used by guards within the castle...” (Vaiya)

“If you are interested in it, it’s fine to ask that arrogant Caim.” (Prufas)

The name of an unexpected person appeared at this place from Prufas. Vaiya tilted his head to the side.

“Caim-dono, it is?” (Vaiya)

Even Prufas himself considers the question, why the name of that civil official appeared here, to be strange.

“That expressionless asshole knows the basic details of the weapons in this place. It seems he was taught the way of using them to some degree by the feudal lord. He is practising his usage of the shuriken and kusarigama in this testing room every morning.” (Prufas)

Furthermore it appears that the other civil official slaves practise here sometimes as well.

“Aren’t they slaves, and even more civil officials? Why are they training?” (Vaiya)

“I don’t know. I don’t care since I wasn’t told about it. If you are worried about it, go and ask them directly.” (Prufas)

“Haa.” (Vaiya)

Vaiya was bad with the type of person like Caim. He couldn’t keep up a conversation with Caim, who doesn’t show his emotions on the surface, since he doesn’t know what he’s thinking about.

“Well, since I gave you the permission to come and go here, it’s fine if you do as you like.” (Prufas)

“Thank you very much.” (Vaiya)

“Please stop. I’m a slave as well and will be troubled if a knight like you bows his head to me.” (Prufas)

Vaiya smiles bitterly as he is watching the back of the leaving Prufas who is laughing.

“I can’t see the slaves here as slaves at all.” (Vaiya)

Pulling himself together, he decided to go meet with Caim. He considered to adopt these weapons in the Royal Knight Order.



The guards in the border fortress on Horant’s side still hadn’t been replaced. Although it’s uncertain whether the previously killed group was the guard unit, there are no soldiers at all.

In the vicinity of the fortress the common people, apparently families and couples, were sitting in countless groups.

Once he passed the border on the highway while riding on his horse, there are soldiers properly standing guard on Orsongrande’s side.

“Earl Tohno-sama! Welcome home!” (Soldier)

The two soldiers, apparently on guard duty, greeted him while smiling. They probably were able to earn some good income during the time of Hifumi’s invasion in Horant.

“Ah, the refugees from Horant won’t come following from behind?” (Hifumi)

“Yea, currently there are only people who have no permission to enter

our country...” (Soldier)

As it is there’s no person in charge on Horant’s side to hand out authorization and identification papers. As one would expect, they can’t enter the country without permission. Except for the merchants, who have a permit, they will be continuously denied entry.

“Then let the refugees heading for the territory of Fokalore pass through. Those guys will become citizens of my place.” (Hifumi)

The soldiers exchanged glances.

“Is it fine to do a verbal, unsubstantiated assertion?” (Soldier)

“I don’t care. I will accept them, if they can come to my territory by themselves.” (Hifumi)

“In such case, affirmative.” (Soldier)

Since it’s also alright to enter the territory over there, Hifumi handed over a suitable gratuity for them to go calling out whether there are any candidates.

One of them remained while the other ran off to Horant’s side in high spirits. Probably the awareness of the borders will fade away if I tear them down once?

“Well, then I leave the rest to you.” (Hifumi)

“Ha!” (Soldier)

Once again he spurs on his horse.

As he is steadily travelling on the highway, there are too many

merchants waving their hands at him.

People, who are living in the capital, and people, who are sensitive to information, began to spread Hifumi's appearance and figure as well as even the strangely formed sword affixed to his waist.

One part among them are adventurers, who have strange tastes in fashion, and people who get carried away easily. There are also people imitating him by handling a single edged sword. Of course, many of those swords are crude while being only thin making them nonsensical to use. Cases of people losing their lives during battles with monsters due to those breaking are occurring as well.

Even a part of the newcomers in the capital's guild are using a thin, single-edged sword, but among those people, who know about the incident of veterans being killed in the guild, there are those who regard the katana as object of dread.

Hifumi waves appropriately and returns waves. Although young women and young women, who boarded carriages, raise shrill voices upon seeing him, Hifumi, who is travelling on horse, passes them by while ignoring them irresponsibly.

“If I become suitably popular, it will likely gather money and people in the territory. Although I want to prepare an expedition again as well.”
(Hifumi)

“I want to make that and I haven't touched this in a while”, while thinking about tools and weapons for Prufas to make once he returned to the territory, he steers his horse to gallop towards Münster.



“Ah~... this is the most relaxing place.” (Sabnak)

“Sabnak... no, I mean, captain. Is it fine to take your dinner at such place? Shall we have a maid carry it to your own room within the castle?”

In the dining hall intended for knight ranks within the castle, Sabnak was enjoying dinner time with his companions, who transferred from the Third Knight Order to the Royal Knight Order, at one table.

“It’s okay to address me without honorifics unless it’s an official place. Not using honorific language is fine, too. It still doesn’t feel real after all.” (Sabnak)

As it’s only food eaten by nobility, the menu is picky about seasoning and ingredients, but the dishes intended for knights are plentiful in quantity as well.

There is a relaxed atmosphere as if in a club room for extracurricular activities. If one protects the minimum of manners, it’s a peculiar place where no one will annoy you.

While stuffing his cheeks with loads of salad and grilled fish, Sabnak laughed with a face, that has gone beyond relaxing and is now slackening.

“The child of a maid, eh... ? Which reminds me, I didn’t hear her name yet.” (Sabnak)

As Sabnak mutters this, his colleagues laughed while dipping bread in a tartar sauce made out of root crops and meat.

“You are a heartless guy. Aren’t they daughters of some nobles, if you talk about the maids within the castle? It will get scary later, if she’s the daughter of some high-ranking noble.”

“Of noble origin, eh?” Sabnak remembered the face of his maid. She has dark blue hair and pupils in the same colour. Her appearance is put in order plainly.

“But you know... how do you call it? She’s eerie.” (Sabnak)

His colleague lowered his eyebrows.

“What are you saying in spite of being able to interact normally with Earl Tohno?”

“It’s slightly different from that.” (Sabnak)

“I don’t quite understand”, the knight at his side shrugs his shoulders. Midas came from somewhere and sat down.

“Let me intrude.” (Midas)

“Eh? Midas-san... no, I mean vice-captain-dono.” (Sabnak)

A dining hall staff member came pushing a wagon, lined up the dishes in front of the sitting Midas and left.

“Midas is okay. ... It’s a bad point that there is too much of the food here.” (Midas)

Sabnak threw a question at Midas, who put the spoon into the stew.

“It is difficult for me to say it, but didn’t you usually go home to eat your wife’s home cooking? What’s wrong today?” (Sabnak)

“Whose fault do you think it is?” (Midas)

Glaring at Sabnak, he eats a mouthful of the stew. He considered his wife’s cooking to be delicious.

“Due to the guarding of the coronation ceremony, all of the guarding

outside the castle has been dumped on the knight order. I became the one responsible for that. Thanks to that, it doesn't look like I will return home until midnight." (Midas)

"Huh? Haven't you arranged for a house near the royal castle after you became a vice-captain, Midas-san? Can't you go home for just eating?" (Sabnak)

"Yea, more or less I did prepare it, but... my wife and me refused because we couldn't calm down with its too big size." (Midas)

"Ah, I know that feeling. There was a room prepared for me within the castle, however having three rooms and even a bathroom for myself... I wondered whether I should return to the dormitory for singles." (Sabnak)

"Before we became aware of it, the knight order has turned into the den of the commoners faction", their knight colleagues ended up laughing unintentionally.

"Rather than the matter of my house, it's more about the case of the maid attached to Sabnak you talked about before." (Midas)

"What's wrong with her?" (Sabnak)

"She is called by the name Sibylla Winger (T/N: Shibiyura Vinja). It would be better if your properly remembered it." (Midas)

"... Why does Midas-san know about her name though?" (Sabnak)

Midas, who put down the spoon, closed his eyes and let out a deep sigh.

"By chance I ran into the prime minister. He told me to convey his regards, if I meet you by chance, Sabnak." (Midas)

"Why does the prime minister..." (Sabnak) (T/N: Aren't we rather slow, Mr. Sabnak?)

"Don't you know the full name of Prime Minister Adol?" (Midas)

“I know at least that much.” (Sabnak)

Even though he replied proudly, it took Sabnak full 10 minutes to remember.

“Umm... it was Adol Phyiol Winger-sama, right? Eh? Winger...”
(Sabnak)

“She is the only daughter of the prime minister. And at the same time she is the niece of the current head of the Marquis Winger household.”
(Midas)

“Eh... but she said something about marrying into money and power...”
(Sabnak)

His trembling fork hits the salad bowl with a clacking.

“At the time Adol-sama was appointed to his duty as prime minister, in order to not make it seem like his family’s home is being favoured, he gave up on his family status as Marquis family. That’s why his daughter isn’t a noble to be precise.” (Midas)

“There’s no doubt that she would marry into money and power”, his colleagues, who heard that, laughed, though it isn’t a laughing matter for Sabnak at all.

“H-However, I ran away from the earldom myself. It’s also not like I will succeed as the third son...” (Sabnak)

The son of an Earl is treated as Associate Viscount, but with having a small annuity and possessing no territory, you almost can’t call them nobles. That situation is the reason why those below the second son of a noble are aiming to become military officers or civil officials. People, who became skilled as knights, were in a fortunate situation.

“Calm down, Sabnak. With your accomplishments so far and the good will of Imeraria-sama, you have reached the problematic status of captain of the Royal Knight Order. You can consider this as being raised to the same rank as your family’s home. ... With conditions attached.” (Midas)

“Conditions... it is?” (Sabnak)

Midas hesitated to continue for a short while, but he resigned himself when Sabnak glared at him.

“... The condition is to marry a partner that suits your rank and settle down with them.” (Midas)

“Well, you should be prepared that you won’t be able to idle around as single indefinitely”, while Midas warned Sabnak, his colleagues escaped in a hurry.

Summary of Author’s notes:

There will be more of Sabnak since he was well received in the last chapter and the release pace will increase (T/N: though that doesn’t really matter to us).

Chapter 70: Runnin' With The Devil

“Damn it! Why does such strong monster appear near the highway!?”

The adventurer was barely able to fend off the tiger-like monster with its 2-meter-length, that brandished its sharp claws, with his sword. The long sword is already worn-out and chipped at several places and his leather armour has been torn off at the shoulders and arms.

“It should have been safe along the highway!”

They, who were delayed in their reaction towards the approaching enemy due to their negligence, aren't able to deal sufficiently with just a single monster opponent and have been forced into an one-sided, defensive battle.

“Let's escape for now! We can't handle this opponent!”

A female adventurer, who was in a slightly distant location holding her magic wand, shouted.

With her robe covered in mud due to her falling down in the confusion, her expression is worn with fatigue after casting earth magic many times over.

“Stand up and run away! What are you doing!?”

No matter how they think about it, the monster is fast and has also stamina left.

“Because I will snare its feet with magic one more time, during that time...”

“If you are going to do it, be quick about it!”

Even during this exchange, the man standing in front as vanguard is slowly getting injured.

“... Burst open, earth!”

Probably because the cast was done in a hurry, the monster is only stricken by a small scale of soil, but luckily it hit the eyes of the monster as planned.

“Gyaaa!”

Having lost its sight, the monster is shaking its head and thrashing around in agony.

The couple of adventurers, who judged this to be a gap, ran towards the highway side-by-side after having looked at the monster's state.

Once they reached the highway after fleeing desperately and saw other adventurers and the wagons of merchants as well, they ended up sitting down together feeling relieved over the presence of the monster not chasing them.

“*pants...* can't run anymore...”

The female adventurer, breathing heavily, clung to her wand.

She worriedly looked at the face of the adventurer, whose breathing calmed down to some degree, at her side.

“... What’s wrong?”

“At the time the monster thrashed around earlier, I saw something weird.”

“Something weird?”

Picking up a branch of a tree, he drew a circle with a triangle in the centre on the ground.

“It looked like this... probably some magic tool?”

“A monster shouldn’t have such a thing like a magic tool, now should it?”

Throwing away the branch, the adventurer looked in the direction of the woman.

“That’s right. In other words, that means someone embedded it in the monster. It’s the first time I hear about such big monster coming out in this area...”

Both of them look at each other, muster some energy and get up.

“Let’s report this to the guild. I think this is quite a big problem.”

“Right, I agree.”

A single small woman stepped in front of the two, who tried to start walking away.

To the vicinity she appears to be a magician as she is wearing a robe, but she doesn't possess a wand.

“It's unnecessary to contact the guild.”

Her facial expressions are lacking however she has a lovely face after taking off the hood. She doesn't do anything but observing the adventurers with her green pupils without a change in her expression.

“... Who are you?”

Clasping the sword, which is riddled all over with chips in its blade, the adventurer set up his stance in order to protect his companion.

“I'm called Origa.” (Origa)

Doing a courteous bow, Origa looks directly into the eyes of the adventurer.

“To be honest, I didn't think you would end up discovering the magic tool this easily either. It's absolutely necessary to come up with something better for the next. Also, it was out of my calculations that you would be able to use the sword better than I expected.” (Origa)

“But then again, you are not at the level to even reach the sole of my master's feet”, she continues.

“Y-You have spurred on that monster!?”

“I was simply close-by when it happened. No more than that. Though I intended for you to kill it as it is, I ended up wasting time needlessly

thanks to you.” (Origa)

Opening the iron-ribbed fan with a sound of sploosh, she conceals her mouth with it and squints.

“Uoo!”

The adventurer, who judged her to be an enemy due to her words, slashed at her straight away deciding that she is a magician without a wand.

However, she nimbly parries 2, 3 slashes with the iron-ribbed fan.

“It’s useless, you know? Although you are swinging your sword, you hips possess no stability. You are throwing your body together with the sword off balance each time. It’s something I often cautioned a close friend of mine about too.” (Origa)

While saying this, she strongly hits the adventurer’s nose.

The adventurer, who retreated back temporarily due to the pain and shock, clenched his teeth while blood was running from his nose.

“One way or the other I consider it, but it is a weapon after all? I judged you to be a magician, but I misread it...”

“There’s no mistake. I’m a magician.” (Origa)

Swapping the iron-ribbed fan into her left hand, she holds out her right hand in front of her.

“! Watch out!”

The man, who instinctively sensed the danger, covers the woman by turning his back on Origa.

In the next second the man's back is cut deeply. He collapsed in the puddle of blood he had produced himself.

“Eh?”

In front of the woman, who couldn't even react now, the opened iron-ribbed fan was swung at the time she finally perceived Origa.

“Too slow.”

The woman's head fell before they eyes of the man, who was barely conscious. Her facial expression was that of not having been able to understand anything.

“Fuck... why...”

Once she made sure that these became the man's final words, Origa surveyed the surroundings.

The territorial soldiers from Fokalore are assembling by running quickly.

“Are there any witnesses?”

“There are none left. We disposed of them all.”

“Then go to the place of the monster that had been put to sleep before and dispose of it as well. It's a problem if it can be seen from outside. Next time incise the chest and bury it deep within.” (Origa)

Once they had dumped the corpse of the man in a thicket close to the highway, Origa commands the soldiers and leaves the highway.

“Hifumi-sama... I will show you that I can definitely accomplish this task...” (Origa)

Her muttering vanished due to being covered by the sound of pushing aside the weeds without anyone hearing it.



Only limited people within the castle, such as the knight orders and a part of the civil officials, were told about the princess' coronation.

That's for the sake of changing all the arrangements depending on the negotiations with Hifumi.

“So, because the report of my victory will happen at the same time as the coronation ceremony, I will have to guard Imeraria while at it?”
(Hifumi)

Hifumi, who finally arrived at the capital, came to the royal castle after being called out by a soldier.

The two people, who are sounding out Hifumi, are Prime Minister Adol and Sabnak, who became the captain of the Royal Knight Order.

Hifumi looked at both's tensed expression as he was sitting in the sofa in front of them and tasting the black tea.

“I want to return home quickly since I also got further plans though...”
(Hifumi)

“It's not like I won the war if I only killed as fit without caring about

victory or anything else”, Hifumi says.

“If I heard correctly, you have also reorganised the knight orders. There is probably no opposing faction left. Is guarding actually necessary?”
(Hifumi)

“There is still some opposition left. We were able to drive it out to some degree, but...” (Sabnak)

He answered in a rush, but doesn't continue after Hifumi glares at him.

“Don't rely on external people for that degree of troubles. I think it's it's only natural to first use your own skills and structures.” (Hifumi)

“Uu...” (Sabnak)

In all honesty, given that we aren't able to catch up with the replacements of the diminished number of knights due to the big battles with Hifumi and the war with Horant, I want the sole cause of it, Hifumi, to follow-up, but the decrement of our knights is substantially the payment for our own mistakes, Sabnak is understanding that as well.

Although the other side will understand it if we request it with reason, the problem was the reason being riddled with holes to stab at. (T/N: Author phrased it more elegantly as in putting in tsukkomi's in a comedy routine, but that is difficult to understand without the Japanese culture as backing knowledge, so localized it)

When he steals a glance at the prime minister sitting next to him, it becomes apparent that he intends to leave the entire situation to Sabnak. Although he somehow understands about the aim behind that, Sabnak doesn't want to know of it.

“It will be different if they stand in my way, but don't make things convenient by making me deal with your enemies.” (Hifumi)

“We don’t intend to do that, but...” (Sabnak)

While he was choosing his next words, the Knight Order Captain Lotomago knocked and entered the room.

Lightly nodding towards the prime minister and Sabnak, Lotomago turned to Hifumi and bowed very deeply.

“I’m the former Third Knight Order’s captain and the present knight order’s captain, Lotomago. I was informed about Hifumi-dono visiting the castle and came in order to extend my deep apology.” (Lotomago)

Staying silent, Hifumi affirmed the wish of Lotomago, who requested to be present here, by nodding.

“Thank you very much.” (Lotomago)

Lotomago, who had Sabnak yield him the seat directly in front of Hifumi, makes eye contact with Hifumi as soon as he sits down.

“First off, Pajou, who had been my subordinate, and, although from a different order, our country’s knight orders caused you troubles. As someone in charge of managing this country’s knight orders, I wish to express my apology.” (Lotomago)

“Apologies are not necessary. All of them compensated for their mistakes with their lives. It’s fine with that.” (Hifumi)

Lotomago bowed his head twice due to Hifumi’s words.

“And, while being aware of my rudeness, I have a single request.”

(Lotomago)

“If it’s about the guarding, I just now refused it though?” (Hifumi)

Being glanced at, Sabnak cast his eyes down.

“I don’t expect Hifumi-dono to act as guard personally. After all that’s the job of our knights and soldiers.” (Lotomago)

Upon Lotomago’s words Sabnak became even smaller. The prime minister awkwardly turned his face away.

“We are indebted to Hifumi-dono for Münster. There is a person called Vaiya, formerly affiliated to the Second Knight Order. Now he has attained a very high rank as vice-captain of the Royal Knight Order below Sabnak here, however... After he returned to the capital accompanying Hifumi-dono’s territorial soldiers of Fokalore, he told me a great story.” (Lotomago)

He wets his mouth by drinking the new black tea brought by a maid.

“I’m told that they are adopting unique training regimens and battle techniques following Hifumi-dono’s guidance and that the result of that guidance also led to the successful defensive battle of Arosel.” (Lotomago)

“Hee...” (Hifumi)

Hifumi, who showed a stern facial expression that could be even interpreted as pouting, laughed happily after hearing this story.

“Vaiya, huh? I’m remembering him. I considered him to have a good

judgement, but it looks like has good eyes as well.” (Hifumi)

“Therefore, while we will guard the castle, I want to request Hifumi-dono to guide the knight orders and the soldiers, but what do you think about that? Actually there is also the fact of Vaiya going to Hifumi-dono’s territory to ask for coaching.” (Lotomago)

“This request is from Sabnak as well”, says Lotomago. Together with the prime minister, the three bowed formally.

“... I guess it’s fine. If it’s one week, I will make some time. I don’t mind if you participate in the training in the territory either. From the beginning I told you that it is your free decision without hiding anything.” (Hifumi)

Sabnak lifted his head quickly all smiles.

“T-Thank you very much!” (Sabnak)

“However, you will have to accept the conditions I’m going to tell you now.” (Hifumi)

And then he gave his conditions.

- Everyone will obey Hifumi’s instructions. The removal of defying people will be left to Hifumi.
- Construction work within the castle will be led by him as well.
- 30 territorial soldiers will be called to the capital and lodging will be prepared for them.

“Removal of defying people means...” (Adol)

As the prime minister timidly voiced his concern, Hifumi laughed scornfully.

“Be relieved, I won’t go as far as killing them if they don’t try to oppose me directly.” (Hifumi)

“Then there’s no problem.” (Lotomago)

Lotomago said plainly.

“C-Captain...” (Sabnak)

“I’m not your captain anymore. Get a grip of yourself.” (Lotomago)

“I-I’m sorry...” (Sabnak)

Lotomago corrected his seating position.

“I have heard about it from Vaiya. I heard you place importance on the cooperation in the movement of the troops. If there is someone obscuring that, they will go through a bitter experience. If they are hindrance even after that, they should be quickly removed, I think.” (Lotomago)

“Because drawing Her Majesty the Queen’s guard and the castle’s defence away isn’t entertainment for the nobles”, Lotomago said.

“Well, then let’s begin from tomorrow. Gather those scheduled to guard within the castle and its surroundings. Summon the carpenters in the afternoon.” (Hifumi)

“Please take care of us.” (Sabnak)

While bowing once again, Sabnak became depressed that he himself would be required to participate as well.



In the hands of Vaiya, who arrived at Caim’s location, he grasped the shuriken and kusarigama he had borrowed from Prufilas.

“Caim-dono, it would be a great help, if you could spare some time for me, however...” (Vaiya)

Vaiya, who knows about the busy style of the civil official slaves after his stay here for a few days, shyly called out to Caim.

Caim, looking at his figure in silence, forced all the documents he held onto Duelgar*, who was coincidentally drawing up official papers in the room. (T/N: *name change from Doelgar, author miss or I missed something here)

“O-Oi!?” (Duelgar)

“Handle this please.” (Caim)

Since even Duelgar knew that a slave can’t decline a request of a knight, who is a noble, he reluctantly decided to take hold of the documents.

Ascertaining that expressionlessly, Caim stands in front of Vaiya once more.

“So, what’s the intention behind your business?” (Caim)

“A-Ah. What’s this... ?” (Vaiya)

Caim nodded once due to Vaiya showing the kusarigama and shuriken anew.

“It’s a replica of the weapons used by Lord-sama and Origa-sama. Those things are called kusarigama and shuriken. I’m not very well-informed about weapons, but I’ve heard that these are rare things you won’t even find in foreign countries.” (Caim)

“I’ve been told by Prufas-dono that Caim-dono is skilled with these weapons. Given that I want to incorporate these weapons in the knight order if possible, I considered to receive Caim-dono’s guidance.” (Vaiya)

“Certainly.” (Caim)

Not only Vaiya was surprised by Caim’s immediate reply, but even Duelgar, who heard it unintentionally, was.

“P-Please wait a moment! The work won’t proceed if Caim goes missing!” (Duelgar)

“Lord-sama...” (Caim)

Raising his right hand to rein in Duelgar, Caim calmly says,

“... wants to actively promote the skills of administrating a territory and the combat techniques of this Tohno territory. Our decentralized deployment has been included within this plan. It will be worrisome if the tasks are delayed with only me not being here. Besides, it’s not like I will use the whole day for it.” (Caim)

“O-Of course. If you can help me for 2 or 3 days, it will be most helpful, I think.” (Vaiya)

“Then, let’s carry out the training session in the mornings. I will find a location. Let’s have Prufas arrange for several weapons, too.” (Caim)

Vaiya, smiling all over his faces, shook hands with Caim due to the unexpectedly favourable terms, however Duelgar wondered with teary eyes whether his workplace, that had finally calmed down, became a thing of the past.

“Duelgar, please explain the matter to the other civil officials tomorrow morning.” (Caim)

“... Understood.” (Duelgar)

I absolutely can’t imagine how I’m to escape the future of “Why didn’t you stop him?” from female camp. Even under normal circumstances, with the bad-tempered Miyukare at the top, there’s no doubt that tomorrow’s morning will become a great disaster. Rather than this, I prefer to do any work, Duelgar thought with a gloomy expression as he faced the documents.

Chapter 71: Faint

Early morning.

On the excessively spacious practise field of the soldiers, located in the outskirts of the capital, the knights, with exception of those on public order duty, gathered. The figures of Royal Knight Order Captain Sabnak, Knight Order Captain Lotomago and Knight Order Vice-Captain Midas are there as well.

All members number 60, including one part being newcomers. It's no more than a third or less of the numbers from their golden age, but although the veterans feel lonely, the gathering of this many knights all at once is rare as well.

In front of them, not knowing when it was built, a simple hut, that was only the frame of an one-story house with walls and door installed, was standing.

Coming out from that hut is the Earl, whose name and face is now known by anyone from the knight orders, Hifumi.

“Good morning.” (Hifumi)

“”Good morning, sir!””

Once Hifumi nodded due to completing the greetings, staff members from the royal castle distributed the weapons they brought along.

Those are wooden short spears that have a length of reaching up to the chest of an adult man.

“Those were made out of wood in order to practise using short spears during the patrolling within the castle. They have no weight, however it will probably be fine if you only learn the style for starters. Each of you

will take the one you're holding home and bring it back for the next time we train." (Hifumi)

Once everyone got a weapon, Hifumi pointed at the frame-only building.

"For now we haven't been able to make more than one house, but the plan is to build two more of them." (Hifumi)

"For what the heck will those be used?" (Sabnak)

Due to Sabnak's question, Hifumi said "It will be faster if I show you" and had three people enter into a room of the frame-only house.

And then he enters holding a short spear himself as well.

"For the time being, the three inside, attack me at the same time. No worries, I will go easy on you." (Hifumi)

Thanks to that line, the knights, who were pride of being the elite, although they were assembled at random, angrily set up their spears.

"Thank you. I judged that your experience of fighting indoors is small. It's faster to show you the way to answer your question." (Hifumi)

Lightly gripping the spear in his right hand, Hifumi is waiting for the three to come attacking.

As one of them stabs with his spear, he lightly avoids that by taking a distance in order to push it away with his foot and then says,

"There are three of you for a reason. Synchronize your breathing." (Hifumi)

While saying this, he leisurely moves to the centre of the room.

"First off, at this point they fail. Do you know why?" (Hifumi)

"Me?" (Knight)

The singled-out knight, who was observing from the outside, let a nervous voice escape.

“Umm... is it about the situation of Earl Tohno moving to the centre of the room?” (Knight)

“Since it looks like you didn’t understand the entire reason, your answer is only half right.” (Hifumi)

While he is explaining, the three are surrounding Hifumi.

They come stabbing at the same time at the place they estimated they would be able to encircle him, but they can’t seize Hifumi.

As he passes through a gap between the knights, he lightly brushes one’s flanks with the edge of the wooden spear.

“Look, with this, one of you was done in.” (Hifumi)

“As expected, if it’s only three knights...”

“What are you saying! If there were 5 or 6 of them in the confined space, they would lose the ability to move about.” (Hifumi)

“Uh...”

After that Hifumi instructed them in stuff such as defence and clearing an encirclement by using all the furnishings like shelves, the building’s walls and the pillars.

At the beginning especially the knights formerly affiliated with the Second Knight Order were complaining about his sneaky and wait-and-see movements, however after repeatedly doing battles against him in groups of three their dissatisfaction naturally vanished as they saw its distinct effectiveness.

Their honesty about this seems to also be due to the Second Knight Order having actually experienced real combat to some degree.

“For a while you will use this hut for training in turns. The remaining groups will fix their training on how to use a spear.” (Hifumi)

There are several of the many techniques, shown by Hifumi, the knights already knew. In addition to the thrusting techniques of the knight’s spearmanship, they are furthermore training technical strikes by using the spear’s pommel to entangle an opponent and lastly there are even references how to use the spear for throwing it.

As all of that was crammed into them within just the morning, the most the knights could do was to learn the things without being able to say whether they would be able to apply it or not.

Furthermore.

“These are the basics. You have to leverage your indoor combat by memorizing these movements within three days.” (Hifumi)

The knights sat down and started to discuss as Hifumi said this much and quickly left towards the castle. The enthusiastic Lotomago is lying on the ground with his head facing up as his body can’t follow up on the movement. He has an extremely relieved facial expression.

“... If we don’t do it, it will be bad, right?” (Lotomago)

Sabnak shakes his head due the words of his colleague.

“You can’t say it’s fine to not do it. At least, I believe it to be necessary for the sake of finishing the upcoming coronation ceremony without problems as person in charge. Also, if you want to take care of your subordinates’ lives, there’s likely no other way but go through with it.” (Sabnak)

“For that reason we have no other choice but to take the lead”, Sabnak said as he put strength into his knees and stood up.



Starting from Horant's capital Adolamelk, the country fell into a temporary, great chaos.

On top of having an enemy invade the royal castle and significant damage to the military forces occurring, troops from a foreign country have been stationed in the capital. Moreover, the situation is that they are essentially training the soldiers from Horant.

Furthermore, even the magic tool research institution, which was run by the state, has been damaged. The amount of money they had to pay to the Tohno territory, located within Orsongrande, as reparation isn't a low amount by no means either.

Naturally this caused dissatisfaction among the nobles dedicated to their country. Movements of opposition against the quite weakened royalty started to emerge, but for some reason just at that timing ... the reports of ferocious monsters increased. Together with the appearance of people, who didn't seem to feel any pain, the nobles had their hands full just dealing with the territories in this confusing state.

And while the nobles had to accept their confinement to indoors, Horant's national army, whose core units were stationed in Adolamelk, were trained and taught about technologies by the territorial soldiers of Fokalore, led by Alyssa, in order to improve their strength to a certain degree to compensate for the decreased number of soldiers.

Even if some noble somewhere revolted right now, they wouldn't be able to rival the capital to make it surrender at all.

“... I guess it's fine to say that we completely lost.” (Suprangel)

While looking at those reports, Suprangel sighed deeply.

Although he himself is the king, his way of inviting soldiers of an enemy nation will give birth to a considerably backlash. Although he had prepared himself for the case of protest coming from someone skilled, the authority of the king was strengthened, the power of the nobles was weakened and the capital was flourishing, if you looked at the results.

In order to increase the distribution channels for magic tools, the number of merchants coming and going from Orsongrande have increased and thus the tax yields grew as well. To some degree they are even able to recover the part, they had to pay as reparation.

“What about the guests from Fokalore?” (Suprangel)

“Haa! The soldiers from Orsongrande haven’t caused any particular problems. ... Rather, since they are distributing the edible parts of monsters, they caught, every day on the market and as they are strangely fine to pay money, they seem to be accepted by the citizens around the castle.”

The young man, who reported this slightly unpleasantly, is a distant relative of the king and calls himself Nelgal (T/N: Nerugaru <<).

As consequence of uncovering many royals cooperating with the royal grandson Veldore, quite a few of them had been exiled or disposed of. Although I summoned this able young man close-by to install him as heir even if his blood is thin, he still has some time of training ahead, Suprangel is thinking.

“There aren’t only bad things about this situation either. If the population is delighted and prospers, it will become the country’s wealth. Rather, what we should be worried about is the soldiers from Fokalore leaving from here.” (Suprangel)

“What do you mean?” (Nelgal)

“If a shadow is cast on the state and public order of the capital after they are gone, the people and nobles will likely consider us royals to be incompetent. Even if it became as it had been before, once they learn about a good state, anything below that won’t be permitted anymore.” (Suprangel)

After Nelgal nodded as he seemed to have understood, he started to ponder about something dropping his line of sight a bit.

The king leisurely waits for him.

“My king, there is a single thing I want to request from you, but...”
(Nelgal)

“I shall allow it. Let’s have you try saying it.” (Suprangel)

“I would like you to dispatch me to Fokalore. I have heard in many places of things such as many people gathering in the territory of Fokalore in order to study including the administration of a territory. If you deem it acceptable to approve, my humble opinion is that I’d like to study those subjects as soon as it possible.” (Nelgal)

Due to his suggestion Suprangel unintentionally showed a smile.

“I see. I heard that the land, governed by that man, is growing rapidly. I guess it wouldn’t be pointless by no means.” (Suprangel)

“Then!” (Nelgal)

“Hmm...” (Suprangel)

He thinks about the circumstances of the man called Hifumi.

The man who came to an unknown world. What will he destroy in this world? What will he create? Where will he go to?

Suprangel unsealed the letter that had been placed next to him. Its contents are information about the enthronement of a new king in Orsongrande.

“Very well. I will dispatch you to Fokalore, Nelgal.” (Suprangel)

“Thank you very much!” (Nelgal)

“I will also accompany you up until the capital of Orsongrande. There I

will directly meet with the new king and ask them for your sake.”
(Suprangel)

“G-Going this far for me...” (Nelgal)

Something like the king leaving his country is unprecedented in Horant. Even in foreign countries it’s something that almost never happens.

Nelgal started to fluster as it became quite a serious matter.

“It’s fine. Now that I recall, you could say I took lessons from my predecessor as well.” (Suprangel)

He swings the letter from before causing a fluttering sound.

“Also, if I only look at this scrap of paper, I won’t understand anything. It is necessary to actually check things with my own eyes to comprehend them. If I had a wider outlook and discernment, things might not have led to Veldore dying either...” (Suprangel)

“My king...” (Nelgal)

“The troops of that man were accompanied by a considerably high-ranking officer. Let’s ask for their cooperation in entering Orsongrande.”
(Suprangel)

“Let’s learn a lot of things by looking together at this vast world”,
Suprangel laughed.



Around the time the knight orders spilled sweat and other things due to Hifumi’s gruelling training in the practise area of the capital, Vaiya, who was in the testing ground inside the dwarves’ workshop within Fokalore, was tumbling about on the ground while being smeared with dirt.

“There is such kind of motion...” (Vaiya)

“As it is the first time for me to handle this weapon-like arm, I’m not able to explain the difference.” (Caim)

While panting lightly, Caim answered expressionlessly as usual.

“First time... eh?” (Vaiya)

“Yes. After I received guidance by the Lord, I’ve been training on a daily routine.” (Caim)

The kusarigama is clasped in Caim’s hands. Holding the counterweight attentively, he has taken a stance of holding out the sickle in front of him.

“... Is it also the instruction of Earl Tohno to not lower your weapon even if your opponent has fallen?” (Vaiya)

“Yes. Even if the opponent seems to be helpless, I was told that it’s the basic to confront them without being negligent.” (Caim)

“I’m no match for you”, Vaiya stands up while dusting off the dirt. He grabbed the sword which was lying nearby.

“You have splendidly broken my pride as a knight.” (Vaiya)

Sheathing the sword, Vaiya took the kusarigama, he had received for his own use, into his hands.

“It’s a strange weapon. However, on top of entangling my sword with the chains, you knocked my body down by pulling my feet away.” (Vaiya)

Although it was the first time the other party used this weapon, Vaiya didn’t think he would be this helpless.

To make matters worse, his opponent, far from being a soldier, is a civil official. It doesn’t even seem like Caim has been training that much

either.

“Once again, please, I want you to teach me how to use this weapon. I did understand that this is something extremely helpful for us.” (Vaiya)

“... May I also ask for the reason?” (Caim)

“There is no other way to maintain order within the castle but to “kill” an enemy by using swords or spears. However, if we are able to efficiently use this kusarigama and the shuriken, we will be able to capture the enemy without having them get away or having to kill them. That will allow us to obtain information from the enemy as well.” (Vaiya)

“If we are able to do that, it won’t be impossible to deal with a situation before it becomes dangerous”, Vaiya talked about his own thoughts.

He ended up blushing as he uncontentiously became passionate talking about it, but he still wanted to convey his enthusiasm.

Caim’s expression, which he saw incidentally, was still arrogant but he moved his head vertically.

“I understand. I will teach you the technique as far as I know.” (Caim)

“W-Well, then after this...” (Vaiya)

Caim slightly squinted due to Vaiya being impatient.

“That’s right, for the sake of your goal, I heard from you, it probably won’t be sufficient to only do one-on one training, and moreover with no one but only me.” (Caim)

No sooner than he said that, more than 30 soldiers in groups showed up on the testing ground.

“Good morning!”

“Yes, good morning.” (Caim)

The soldiers, quickly forming a line, are each carrying their own kusarigama in their hands. They have straightened their backs facing towards Caim.

Caim stands in front of them in a natural manner.

Caim talks in his usual flat voice to Vaiya, who doesn't understand what is happening.

“These are the people who received instructions from Lord-sama together with me. For starters, we will drive the techniques, we know of, into Vaiya-sama.” (Caim)

“Eh? Drive into me means...” (Vaiya)

To Vaiya it looked like Caim's eyes sparkled.

“From today onwards we will drive all of the “guidance”, we received from Lord-sama, into you with all our power. ... Please be somehow careful to not die.” (Caim)

“Haha... please don't be too hard on me...” (Vaiya)

I might have made a slight mistake in my choice of whom to ask for help, Vaiya considered.

Chapter 72: Miss You

After preparing for 3 days for the coronation ceremony, everyone was in a state of hurrying along regardless of their posts within the castle. The people, taking part in Orsongrande's national politics, didn't reveal the details of the ceremony until the very last moment either.

This is due to Hifumi's instruction. He has explained that it's for the sake of not giving the enemies time to prepare hindering them to make thorough plans. On the other hand the side of the defence has been drilled in the techniques required for their guard duty at a fast pace by Hifumi and he has also given the necessary directions for the construction works.

Although only the date of the ceremony has been officially announced, so that things like food stalls *etc.* could be prepared for the festival on the land near the castle, the time and the details of the ceremony, even now three days before the actual event, still haven't been released.

“So, why have even I been left out from the circle of the privy?”
(Imeraria)

Imeraria asked in astonishment within her office.

Sabnak, handling paper work in the same room, raises his face due to Imeraria's muttering.

“Please do understand. Since you are the leading actor, we want you to solely focus on the ceremony itself, Imeraria-sama.” (Sabnak)

“That excuse has been provided to you by Hifumi-sama anyway.”
(Imeraria)

“U...” (Sabnak)

I'm not amused, Imeraria honestly thought. By now it can't be helped anymore that he says such things due to Hifumi's influence, but the pillars of supporting me to become the ruler give off a strange vibe.

After giving a fleeting glance at Sabnak, who turned his back and sorted the documents without saying anything as if running away, she sighed heavily.

These last days Imeraria had been completely disconnected from any practical work. As it reached the point that Sabnak followed her around as bodyguard all the time, he quickly dealt with any official work before she became aware of it with the important financial affairs being the only exception.

Of course Imeraria has been doing the final checks, however since he finishes all of it in a way that leaves nothing to complain about, her only work is to look the documents over and sign them. As he handles all the work very quickly, the civil officials have apparently been delighted as well.

Although I have to admit his efficiency all the same, I'm slightly not amused that it has been Hifumi, who recognised Sabnak's abilities first and called him into the administration of his territory.

“Excuse me.” (Adol)

It was Prime Minister Adol who came entering the office.

Since the time Sabnak is shadowing Imeraria, his help in dealing with the work and his hints have been gradually decreasing. He hasn't informed Imeraria of the exact reason for that, but he likely has some other goal in mind.

After giving a glance at the way Sabnak works, Adol made a retainer's bow in front of Imeraria. Finishing a respectful greeting, he brought out a letter addressed to Imeraria.

“From whom is it?” (Imeraria)

“It’s from Earl Biron, your Majesty.” (Adol)

“... Let me have a look.” (Imeraria)

Listening to the letter from Biron, Sabnak also stops his hands and lines up next to Adol.

During the time she read through the letter, no one said anything.

“Sabnak-san.” (Imeraria)

“Ha!” (Sabnak)

“The king of Horant has personally visited Biron-san in Münster to propose negotiations and wants to attend my coronation ceremony without fail on this occasion.” (Imeraria)

“A-A foreign king, t-the coronation ceremony...” (Sabnak)

“It’s unprecedented.” (Adol)

It’s inevitable that the three people are brooding over it. Basically it’s unthinkable for a king to meet a fellow head of state in this world in the first place. Above a king being the national polity himself, it’s even rare for a king to leave his country as long as his country isn’t ruined.

“What’s his aim?” (Sabnak)

“Going by what Biron told me, he wants to interact with me from now on and talk about the post-war procedures. It seems he asked to pass on a message that he wants to request an exchange of technology through Hifumi-sama.” (Imeraria)

Although Imeraria tilted her head to the side asking “What kind of

technology exchange is this about?”, Sabnak stroke his forehead with his right hand.

“Ah~ ... At the time Hifumi-san entered Horant, the equipment of the troops of his own territory were delayed in getting into the country. Isn't it likely that he is aiming for the same parts as Vaiya?” (Sabnak)

“... At any rate, I probably can't afford to refuse him. Sabnak-san, please contact Biron-san and prepare to receive the king together with the prime minister and the collaborating guards. Let's report this to Hifumi as well.” (Imeraria)

“As you wish.” (Sabnak)

“Which reminds me”, Imeraria realized.

“Even though Hifumi-sama is coming and going to the royal castle every day, I don't see him. Somehow the number of knights being within the castle decreased too...” (Imeraria)

“Ah, that's because he has the knights practising being on duty using the hidden pathways and the servant's passages. Seeing that there are such passages within the castle, the royal castle of Orsongrande has a deep history as expected.” (Sabnak)

“... Though it's the first time I heard about something like hidden pathways existing?” (Imeraria)

“Eh?” (Sabnak)

“Eh?” (Imeraria)

Imeraria and Sabnak were both surprised, while Adol hurriedly sneaked out of the office.



While Hifumi visited the royal castle several times, he discovered a number of passages with an unnatural air.

There are the sideways used by the servants, but those are located in the ceiling and under the floor. There is a strange dead space between the walls.

While examining those by knocking on the wood used as cover, he found pathways and secret chambers, even apart from the servant's passages, apparently intended as connected escape routes in places such as the hall, the audience hall, Imeraria's office, the bedrooms of royalty, *etc.*

Since he found those at great troubles, it would be fine for the guards to use these pathways and he even established new camouflaged exits and entrances to a part of the pathways. He completed a network of secret pathways that even the master of Orsongrande's royal castle didn't know of.

Each place has a dormer window that also serves as peeking hole, which can't be spotted from the hallways and rooms if one holds his breath in the pathways. Also, he put short spears and shurikens in shelves, which were placed midway, making sure that weapons are available in times of emergency at those places.

“So, if there's some guy who can be considered suspicious, you can check his words and behaviour like this and, if necessary, drag them in here and dispose of them.” (Hifumi)

Taking along several of the knights practising to be on duty, Hifumi is explaining the details for the nth time. Given that there are already no knight here who are holding doubts towards Hifumi's abilities, there isn't any refusal either.

“Do you believe it to have some meaning to erase a target behind the scenes without uncovering them in public? Isn't it alright to openly defeat them, if we can prove the disturbing elements to have properly disappeared?”

“This depends on the objective. Excluding some sorts of performances, if, for example, you dealt with the masses badly, you might end up failing to give them a sense of security. However...” (Hifumi)

Pointing at the peeking hole in the gloomy pathway, Hifumi instructs all of them to look at the situation outside.

What can be seen is a mid-sized hall within the castle used for such things like parties.

“Try to think there was some kind of ceremony going on in this kind of place. Will you interrupt the ceremony just because one rat has evaded the observation? Do you believe it to be right as knights to boast your accomplishments while neglecting the princess just because you defeated a single enemy, who obstructed the upcoming coronation ceremony?” (Hifumi)

“That is...”

Of course there will be important ceremonies once the princess becomes the queen. It’s unthinkable for them to use these as stepping stones for the sake of raising achievements for themselves.

“To the very end, consider being a guard as job of working behind the scenes. Believe it to be just right, if there is no opportunity of publicly announce that “nothing happened.” Besides, it would be probably better if you didn’t go public on how they died at that time either.” (Hifumi)

While endlessly continuing such explanations, they are moving around from one end to the other in order to fully grasp the hidden paths.

It’s not just walking. While crawling around, they are training to move to not be noticed by anyone in the adjoining rooms and hallways by not producing any sounds.

Related to these things, the knights hailing from the former Third Knight Order are grasping the concepts a lot faster than those from the former Second Knight Order, too. Even Sabnak, who joined the first group to be guided, has learned the method of moving by grovelling on the ground without hesitation.

“All of you, don’t talk. Let’s now try to listen to the talks of the lot in this room.” (Hifumi)

Upon Hifumi’s words, the knights held their ears against the wall of the pathway quickly. The conversation of two men was audible to their ears.

“So, how’s the coronation ceremony project going?”

“Don’t know. The details of the ceremony still haven’t been passed down to anyone but a selected few. On the contrary, even the princess doesn’t seem to have been informed.”

What the knights could see through the peeking hole were two middle-aged civil officials, appearing to be nobles, having a private chat in a small conference room.

“As the Second Knight Order was destroyed, the management of the event ended up being completely handled by the princess. As it is now, we will lose the ability to arrange the agreed positions for the other nobles.”

“Don’t be impatient. Rather than that, let’s think about something else.”

“Don’t be impatient? You should be a bit more tense! We already received the money. At this rate we will be killed by our client.”

“Restrain your voice. If you consider the preparations of the venue and cooking, it won’t be strange for them to announce it by today either. Since the number of knights has decreased, the number of knights on guard duty shouldn’t yet be sufficient. It’s probably possible to slip in as temporary guards there.”

Although one person is pretending to be talking with composure, their

voice is gradually trembling.

“... But, I heard the guards have been influenced by that Earl Tohno.”

“What can a single person do anyway? Those sons of nobles, who bought their way in, will be defeated by trained rogues, even if they are accompanied by prestige.”

“I see...”

Having listened up until there, the knights looked at each other's faces. They heard a conversation that could be regarded as completely wicked.

And everyone's view converged on Hifumi.

“You heard them. Well, if you deal with them secretly for argument's sake, do you think you will be able to kill their clients within the castle as well, if they gave away their client?” (Hifumi)

Showing them a demonstration, Hifumi quietly intrudes the room, where the two are still continuing their private talk, by entering through a hidden door.

“So, how many people have to infiltrate the castle at the very least?”

“It would be reasonable for many to be there. Please wait for a moment...”

The man, who was being asked, dropped his sight. In the moment he tried to take out a memo from his pocket, Hifumi plugged up the nose and mouth of the other man. While quickly dragging him below the desk, he pressed down on his carotid artery with his free hand and made him faint that way.

“Oy, where did you go?”

As the man is looking around restlessly trying to find his companion, who can't be seen anywhere, after raising his face, he was easily made to faint by Hifumi, who attacked from the back after getting up on his feet.

“It's fine to come out.” (Hifumi)

The knights, coming out in groups, had their faces turn pale evenly.

Although the opponents weren't military officers, it apparently caused a big shock to them how easily Hifumi strangled and defeated those two.

“It's plenty even if you only cover up the nose properly. With only that you will suppress “sounds” quite well. It can be considered good, if you stay completely hidden. It's very good if you aren't discovered until the instant you defeat the first guy, if there are two opponents.” (Hifumi)

Following Hifumi's instruction, they dragged the two blacked-out men into the dim hidden pathway.

“Train to be able to do these kinds of movements with a group of three. The group, who is able to do this smoothly, will arrest the “client” of these guys.” (Hifumi)

The knights showed a distinct determination due to these words. It looks like there is a considerable attitude of wanting to raise achievements as knight after all.

(If they improve well, it will become fun to fight these guys, too.)
(Hifumi)

I will have them accumulate plenty of experience for now, Hifumi fired up himself.



Adol's daughter, Shibyura Winger, was fairly famous as being an excellent maid within the castle. Above that, she was famous among the other maids for being a woman indifferent to people of the same sex and having scarce facial expressions.

Even so, she was continuing her work within the castle without minding the assessment of her surroundings. Accordingly she was an extreme individualist adhering only to her own accomplishments. The matter of her father being the prime minister didn't have much of an influence on that.

“... Cleaning complete.” (Shibyura)

She finished cleaning Sabnak's office by herself, without borrowing the help of anyone today just as every day.

Recently the times of the master of this room being in the office of the princess have become long, but Shibyura considered this to make the cleaning easier.

The cleaning, that started with dusting off, was completed by even tending the furnishings and brushing the carpets. All that is left now is to throw away the trash.

The objective of her cleaning is the ideal of “the person being able to use it in a clean state without noticing it.”

There are pens and documents scattering about on top of Sabnak's desk, that are unexpectedly difficult to sort in contrast to the speed of disposing of them. But even while wiping the desk, she perfectly keeps the things in the original state without having a single look into the documents.

She was satisfied the moment she was able to to keep the current state of before and after the sweeping without changing anything while cleaning it.

“He didn't come back today either.” (Shibyura)

She puts back the washed tea set, which wasn't used today either, into the shelf in the plain cooking space, which takes up a small part of the office.

Checking the remaining quantity of tea and sugar, she memorizes the amount she has to take from the kitchen tomorrow morning.

With this her first job of the day finishes, but there is still plenty of time left. As far as people, who have a fixed and exclusive role attached to them like her, are concerned, they can freely decide the allocation of tasks, but as a type, who stays silent starting first in the morning, she has almost one hour time left every day.

“... Alright.” (Shibyura)

Shibyura, who suddenly rolled around on the carpet with its long hairs, extends both arms straight ahead and rolls around to the right and left side. She enjoys the feeling of the carpet's hairs tickling her face and limbs.

And yet, her cleaning was to the degree that one can say she can keep up her appearance without getting the clothes dirty.

“Umm...”

Being called upon suddenly, Shibyura came to a halt as she looked upwards.

Once she shifted her sight timidly, it was Sabnak, who turned up from within the shadows of the cupboard.

“S-Sorry. I didn't intend to look at you, but once I observed you from the back, leaving or staying...” (Sabnak)

Although Sabnak slowly believed it to have been better to stay silent, he regretted that he didn't stay hidden until she left.

“Welcome back.” (Shibyura)

She bows while laying on top of the carpet.

“Do you want to drink some tea?” (Shibyura)

“A-Ah... please.” (Sabnak)

Watching Shibyura, who starts to prepare tea as if nothing has happened, Sabnak began to deal with the documents on his desk in relief. The serving of tea, she did, was as splendid as usual.

“Please keep the matter from before secret. If you told this to anyone, it would...” (Shibyura)

“I-It’s fine! I won’t tell anyone. No one will believe that an excellent maid such as yourself is doing something like that anyway!” (Sabnak)

“Understood. Then I will keep it a secret that you peeped at me as well.” (Shibyura)

“That’s far too scandalous!” (Sabnak)

He’s an interesting guy after all, Shibyura laughed within her mind.

Chapter 73: In My Place

Although those working within the castle are elites, the work of the maids starts early in the morning.

There are also cases of taking breakfast to the workplace of the nobles, they have been assigned to. Each of them is busy preparing as there are those, who will always complain about drinks in the morning, if it hasn't been prepared.

There are also many people, who are taking breakfast to their masters before the sun has risen in the dormitory of the girls. Dawn is crowded with maids reporting for work.

If you talk about Shibyura, who is assigned to Sabnak, you might say that she will be alright, if she takes it slow going to work.

Given that Sabnak has a long history of working in the provinces by himself, he will at least do basic cleaning and prepare tea in his spare time to get it done quickly. Having led a life of not being accustomed to take a person in his service like other nobles, Sabnak even rarely tells Shibyura to do this or that.

On the contrary, he isn't in the office since morning. Today's the same.

“Well, then let's start.” (Shibyura)

Since basic work like cleaning has become her second nature, Shibyura repeated a fixed cleaning routine every day. She also has pride in tidying up all places, even dim rooms, within the castle.

“... It bothers me.” (Shibyura)

Even such girl couldn't help to be worried about a place in the room since today morning.

Yesterday Sabnak suddenly appeared next to the cupboard.

He ended up dodging how he got into the room, but she knows that there is some secret concerning this cupboard.

Being bothered by it once, her hands have stopped cleaning and she has turned her view to the shelves standing like that for around an hour.

“Let’s try examine it just a little bit.” (Shibyura)

And once she firmly pushed the wall right next to the cupboard, it opened.

“This is...” (Shibyura)

It’s an entrance where a knight wearing his armour barely fits through, but for the petite Shibyura it has plenty of size. As she peeks inside, she can see a dim passageway continuing onwards.

It’s even gloomier than the passageways used by the servants and maids, which Shibyura knows about as well. All over it gives an impression of being narrow. Standing alone midway, something like shelves has been installed.

Once she timidly stepped into the passageway, the door closed automatically.

As she touched the wall in panic, it opened just same as before. Shibyura took a breath.

(I wasn’t aware that there was such passageway.) (Shibyura)

The passageways used by the servants are, to the bitter end, for the sake of running through the hallways without being seen and also served as a short-cut to carry stuff like food hurriedly. They aren’t directly connected to a room.

If it’s possible to take an even better short-cut to the dining hall, it will become even easier to prepare the meals for Sabnak, with such feeling she advances through the hidden pathway.

“Don’t move.”

Shibyura was surprised to the degree of jumping up when she was suddenly called.

“Don’t shout. Slowly turn your face in my direction.”

Once she finished turning her face as ordered, she saw a person, she had already seen somewhere, pointing a thin blade towards her.

“Tell me your name and affiliation.” (Hifumi)

“... I’m Shibyura Winger. I’m working as maid in the castle.” (Shibyura)

Having a weapon pointed at her for the first time in her life, her voice has been trembling even though she pretends to be calm.

“You appear to be Earl Tohno, right... ?” (Shibyura)

As Shibyura asked him that, Hifumi lowered his katana.

“That’s right. If I’m not wrong you were Sabnak’s maid. Why are you here?” (Hifumi)

Even though he has lowered his weapon, Hifumi’s look is sharp as usual as if seeking for gaps in Shibyura defence.

Although she hesitated for a moment, she honestly tells him that she was investigating the place of Sabnak’s coming and going out of curiosity, because he has also seen the place where she has been talking with Sabnak in the office.

“That guy is...” (Hifumi)

“It’s not like it’s highly classified information”, seeing Hifumi being in a huff, Shibyura casually observes him anew, wondering Is this the person that has been feared by everyone within the castle?

I don’t know to which country his clothing belongs and he has black pupils and black hair, I hadn’t seen anywhere else. Although his appearance looks to be young, no different from me, he also has continuously an even stronger, oppressive aura than father.

“Anyway, leave from here right away. If you were mistaken for an invader, you wouldn’t be even able to complain about getting killed.”
(Hifumi)

“Kil... This is within the castle... ?” (Shibyura)

Hifumi shifts his attention towards Shibyura, who raised her voice unintentionally, as if seeing something strange.

“The place is irrelevant. Things, people, faith, all of it is fine. If you consider protecting something, you will have to get rid of hindrances without hesitation. Those, who are deceived by handicaps and helplessly fear that, are... idiots.” (Hifumi)

“And, since I will properly teach Sabnak about the importance of information, it’s fine for you to tell him to wait in his office at night”, Hifumi vanished to the other side of the gloomy passageway.



At the time Hifumi was still secluding himself in the hidden pathways to confirm the structure within the castle, a messenger from Vichy arrived.

The man, calling himself an envoy of the central committee, has come

to visit the royal capital leading around 10 attendants. Although it was a rude visit without even a previous arrangement, it was decided that he would be meeting the prime minister for the time being.

In the place being a room that is used as reception room within the castle, there are two knights standing in the back of the prime minister. Two soldiers, acting as attendants, are accompanying the envoy.

“It’s the first time for us to meet each other. I’m called Roshi and was dispatched by Vichy’s central committee. I’ve heard that new king will be enthroned in Orsongrande at this time. As representative of Vichy, I hurried to extend my congratulations.” (Roshi)

He handed over a list, which is recording handicrafts and fabrics native to Vichy in addition to magic tools apparently made in Horant, while telling “Please take this as a little gift.”

The prime minister noticed then, the envoy in front of me hasn’t realized that the quarrel between Orsongrande and Horant has mostly been settled already, now has he?

“Thank you very much for this. By the way, it’s not like we greatly advertised the coronation ceremony to that degree, but Vichy’s central committee seems to possess quite good ears.” (Adol)

Roshi’s smile, that looked as if plastered onto him, wasn’t disturbed by the words of Prime Minister Adol. He shook his head with a “No, no.”

“Only by chance. We used the opportunity to ask a certain noble-sama of your country with whom we previously also had business discussions. Becoming aware of the matter with the coronation immediately after entering your country, I immediately got in contact with my own country in a hurry. I’m very sorry that the envoy is someone of my degree, but above all, I was told that it was likely quicker to use me for the celebration.” (Roshi)

“Oh my goodness, you have experienced quite the troublesome journey. Please relax at ease until the coronation ceremony. We will prepare a room for you.” (Adol)

“Then I will gladly take you up on your kind offer. And, is it possible to

receive an audience with the new Majesty the Queen? If you don't mind it, I want to report all of this to the central committee, but..." (Roshi)

It came, huh? Adol thought. He wanted to avoid Imeraria getting in contact with him until he knows the objective of Vichy, if possible.

"The princess is busy with the preparations for the coronation ceremony. Once the ceremony finished, she might have a little bit time, but at this point in time, it's quite..." (Adol)

"That's right, isn't it. How regrettable." (Roshi)

"If it's alright with you, I will listen to the reason for your visit." (Adol)

Although he displayed a look of pondering over it for a bit due to Adol's question, Roshi easily gave a nod.

"That's right. If I'm able to discuss it with Your Excellency, the prime minister, in advance, it might be even better than conveying it while under stress of being in front of Her Majesty the Queen." (Roshi)

As he said this much, Roshi corrected his posture, surveyed his vicinity and began to speak in a lowered voice.

"Concerning the previous sorrowful quarrel, I want to officially propose peace from Vichy. Now, if that's possible, the central committee is considering to enter a peace treaty between your country and the central committee..." (Roshi)

While still floating a smile on his lips, Roshi's eyes are piercing the prime minister.

"Of course we are the defeated side. Even regarding the reparations, I have the privilege of offering as much as is possible. Also, regarding the flow of goods such as magic tools etc, I'm prepared to discuss how to suit the circumstances of your country's merchants." (Roshi)

Due to the word “defeated,” the guards, which Roshi brought along, reacted with a twitch, but the prime minister purposely ignored that. They aren’t important.

First off, with this it is clear that they apparently don’t know that a direct trade between Orsongrande and Horant has begun. And even the central committee’s aim has become evident.

“Your offer became clear. Let’s prepare an opportunity for a conference once I’ve coordinated our side. On that occasion we will talk about the concrete details.” (Adol)

“Oh, thank you very much. Please convey my best regards to Her Majesty.” (Roshi)

Roshi exits the room while bowing many times over.

The prime minister, who saw him off, slowly inhaled the aroma of the newly, brewed tea into his nose.

“He gives off the feeling of being driven against the wall quite a bit.” (Hifumi)

“Earl Tohno...” (Adol)

From a different direction of the door, Roshi’s group left, in a direction where there shouldn’t be anything like a door, Hifumi entered the room and sat across Adol.

Although Adol was surprised with how he hasn’t heard him, it reached already the point of him choosing to whom to apply common sense after having seen the actions of the shinigami and Hifumi until now.

“Driven against the wall... that is probably so. Vichy still didn’t recover from the damage it received by you, Earl Tohno. The situation is that their country has been split apart.” (Adol)

“Accordingly, although the independent Pursang is being blockaded, if they are lawful state connected to Orsongrande as state, that place will yearn for support, if possible, huh? Besides...” (Hifumi)

“Have you realized something?” (Adol)

Hifumi, who laughed broadly, only said, “it’s the job of the Royal Knight Order from here on”, and stood up.

The prime minister speaks as he though it’s something he should confirm,

“What do you think about the current Vichy, Earl Tohno?” (Adol)

“I don’t care. I have no intention to support either the central committee or Pursang. ... Well, it would be great, if they did their best in competing with each other even more.” (Hifumi)

“... Though I have a request to you, Earl Tohno.” (Adol)

Without answering, Hifumi stood and looked into Adol’s face.

“Will you accept to be present at the conference between Vichy’s envoy and Imeraria-sama?” (Adol)

Hifumi, who showed a blank expression for an instant, laughed as if enjoying it in the next instant.

“That’s great. Sounds interesting.” (Hifumi)



The unit of Vaiya’s group that had been transferred to Fokalore, riding atop horses, arrived totally out-of-breath at the capital two days before the scheduled coronation ceremony. It was quite at the last moment.

“We have returned.” (Vaiya)

Vaiya, who went to report of their return, looked at Sabnak sitting at his desk and showing the expression of a shadow.

“A-Ah... Vaiya, huh? Thanks for your work.” (Sabnak)

“A-Are you alright?” (Vaiya)

“Yea, I’ve been slightly busy with various preparations... Since I want you to participate from now on as well, Vaiya, have a look at this for the time being. I will have you join in the guarding, including the guys you led back here.” (Sabnak)

“Understood, sir.” (Vaiya)

Once he gave him the compiled documents, Sabnak urged Vaiya to sit down at the reception. Shibyura quickly prepares black tea.

“So, have there been any results of you going as far as Fokalore? ... With the exception of you finding a wife, that is.” (Sabnak)

“Please stop it. I obtained the permission from Viscount Amazelo, but since it has now become a talk of being adopted into their family, the marriage is still a long way off...” (Vaiya)

“Yea. Since you will honestly hurt my feelings, if you speak this joyfully, let’s close this topic now.” (Sabnak)

“... Though you will be able to manage one way or the other, if you consider doing something.” (Shibyura)

Shibyura mutters a few words due to the teary-eyed Sabnak.

“Listen, will you leave until I call you?” (Sabnak)

“Understood.” (Shibyura)

“Umm...” (Vaiya)

“Ah, it’s fine to not mind her.” (Sabnak)

“Haa.” (Vaiya)

Even while being puzzled due to the state of master and servant, which held a strange mood, Vaiya orally reported about the information of the shuriken and kusarigama, he had driven into him. He handed over a report to Sabnak he had prepared ahead of time.

“I heard these weapons were invented by Earl Tohno, but with the possibilities of capturing without killing and causing damage to an opponent on distance, I wonder whether there is value in considering these as official equipment, too.” (Vaiya)

“However, since no one but Hifumi used this in combat so far, isn’t there a necessity for at least your group, Vaiya, to be skilled enough to teach about those to the other members?” (Sabnak)

“Concerning the coaching, if we are able to obtain a final permission from Earl Tohno, it will be possible to even dispatch personnel for training from Fokalore.” (Vaiya)

“You’ve prepared considerably well.” (Sabnak)

“I was able to obtain Caim-dono’s cooperation.” (Vaiya)

“Him, eh? ... Then I can agree.” (Sabnak)

Even for Sabnak and Vaiya, in the end they never seen a scene of Caim

smiling broadly. They remembered the civil official slave, who holds an alias of arrogance for each of them.

“If that’s the case, Hifumi-san is just now within the castle... since he might be anywhere, it’s fine if you get permission to search for him. The other members are already getting coached by Hifumi-san. It’s even probable that it’s necessary for him to teach someone continuously.”
(Sabnak)

“Besides”, Sabnak showed a bitter smile due to a new document on the table.

“We might be able to test the usefulness of this ‘kusarigama.’ Even as early as tomorrow.” (Sabnak)

The document has a tile called “Instructions for a mousetrap.”

“It’s a plan written by Hifumi-san. Tomorrow morning Imeraria-sama will meet with the envoy from Vichy. I hear that Hifumi-san will be present there, but... the movements of Vichy’s attendants are suspicious, going by Hifumi-san, who has been keeping an eye on them.” (Sabnak)

While listening to Sabnak’s talk, Vaiya goes ahead with reading the documents. It’s the first time he has seen the matter about hidden pathways, but apparently those were used for monitoring and as a test for combat.

“Please get ready to personally search for Hifumi-san from now on. You will be the person in charge of this operation, Vaiya.” (Sabnak)

“Roger, sir. Please leave it to me.” (Vaiya)

With this being the first military operation of the Royal Knight Order, both of them put fighting spirit into it.

Chapter 74: Stupid Like This

Waiting for the coronation ceremony the next day, hurried preparations are advancing in a room, reserved for the sake of the conference, in a corner of the castle.

In a plain room, that is generally used for stuff like normal conventions etc., a luxurious chair for Princess Imeraria to sit in has been brought in and opposite of it 3 chairs have been lined up.

Providing a small table besides each of the chairs, it was planned to place things like black tea and water jugs there at the time of the conference.

The maids, who had been entrusted with the location of the conference, waited uprightly for the Princess' group to arrive in the corners of the room with tense expressions. But there was someone else there waiting for the Princess' group except the girls. Checking the room's inside from gaps in hung up pictures, they are members of the Royal Knight Order.

As only Sabnak, among the Royal Knight Order, would carry out his guard duty standing next to the princess, it had been decided to use this opportunity to test the monitoring from hidden pathways. Three adult knights were holding their breaths while huddling together shoulder-by-shoulder and holding spears in their hands.

The plan is for them to jump out through the thin wall in order to assist Sabnak in case something happens, but it doesn't even seem like it will turn into such a situation in the first place.

“Please excuse me.” (Roshi)

“We awaited your arrival. Please come this way and sit down.”

The first, who made an appearance, was the envoy dispatched by Vichy's central committee, Roshi. Without a single attendant, he entered

the room by himself and sat down on the chair he was guided to by a maid.

With little to no waiting, a single maid enters the room and announces 「Her Highness, the Princess, is entering the room」.

Roshi stood up and bowed his head to Imeraria walking in while being slowly led by Sabnak.

“Your Majesty, the Queen, I’m extremely delighted for you to give me a chance for discussions in spite my sudden request.” (Roshi)

Though he expressed his gratitude with exaggerating gestures, he gives me a bad feeling with his expression and its fake smile stuck on it, Imeraria honestly thought deep inside.

“Officially I still haven’t inherited the throne. Currently my social standing is nothing more than that of a princess.” (Imeraria)

“This is, I was gravely impolite, Your Highness, the Princess. Then, given that I don’t want to annoy Her Highness with wasting her precious time on someone as insignificant as me, though it is immediate, the request from my country is...” (Roshi)

“Wait. There are other participants joining us on this conference.” (Imeraria)

Flatly stopping Roshi, who tried to advance the talks at his own leisure, Imeraria quietly tasted the prepared black tea.

Once she looks at the maid, who poured the tea, which gave off a nice fragrance, she saw the maid, who possessed deep blue hair and pupils, facing in the direction of Sabnak nonchalantly and without any expression.

That’s the prime minister’s daughter? Even if Imeraria’s curiosity was apparently piqued towards that girl of marriageable age, the arrival of new conference participants was announced.

“Earl Hifumi Tohno-sama and the king of Horant, Suprangel-sama, are

entering.”

Although Imeraria questioned why the names were read out aloud although they aren't at the audience hall, seeing Roshi's shocked face and him forgetting to stand up in front of them, she watched Hifumi and an old man entering while smiling broadly. She knew they were acting.

Imeraria, standing up from her chair, lightly pinched her skirt while doing her greetings. Even for this way of greeting it will be the last time today, she thinks deeply moved.

“Nice to meet you, Your Majesty, King of Horant. I'm Orsongrande's princess, called Imeraria Torie Orsongrande. ... Thank you for your quick attendance.” (Imeraria)

“Oh, you are the holy woman I heard stories of. I'm the king of Horant, Suprangel Gengh Horant. I'm representing the country, which was utterly defeated by this man the other day.” (Suprangel)

Observing Suprangel, who laughed loudly pointing at Hifumi, Imeraria lowered her eyebrows. Going by the stories she heard before, the man Suprangel of Horant should be a calm person notorious for being always hard to please.

“At any rate, that vehicle called platform wagon is fun. Though I came here hitching a ride from Alyssa-dono, there was no need for breaks unlike with horses. Fodder isn't needed either.” (Suprangel)

“What foolish thing are you saying. Thanks to that several of Horant's soldier had to go to the medical office with muscular pains.” (Hifumi)

“Humph. Seems that they have to be trained in this way of transportation. Though they were trained by Alyssa-dono after getting healed, there is still a long way to go, huh?” (Suprangel)

As if they didn't fight a war just a few days ago, Hifumi and Suprangel harmoniously talked with each other, sat next to each other with a flump and tasted the black tea.

As Hifumi, who should be the enemy, sat next to the ruler of the country, which should be fighting against Orsongrande, to which Hifumi

belonged, Roshi's mouth flapped open and closed.

“Ho, it's a delicious black tea. I want to buy this before I return home.”
(Suprangel)

“We will prepare it at the time of your return then. Well then, let's start this conference. Incidentally, the representatives of all three human countries have gathered.” (Imeraria)

“T-That is...” (Roshi)

Suprangel made the panicked Roshi shut up with a single glare.

“Be quiet and listen. And it's best to desperately think how to capitalise on such good fortune that you were able to be one of the first countries to realise how the world is changing.” (Suprangel)

Hifumi, who tossed around 4 pieces of the baked sweets, similar to biscuits, placed in front of him into his mouth in sequence, listened to their conversation while drinking the black tea in one go.

“Give me more sweets. Well, shall I report to Her Highness, the Princess, first then?” (Hifumi)

Imeraria got sullen at Hifumi for forcibly using honorific language, but immediately relaxed.

On the other hand, Roshi trembled all over in fear.

With the conference up until this point, Vichy has been left at the side with Orsongrande and Horant already having the confrontation between each other concluded. On the contrary, even a friendly atmosphere had developed between them.

Roshi had intended to finish the war with the minimal compensation of circulating the magic tools from Horant as shield and to have only the country managed by the central committee to be recognised as official

state of Vichy's territory. That plan was cut without him uttering a single word.

Even my dream of becoming a member of the committee has fallen apart with this, he thought. There was nothing Roshi could do but quiver in anger.

“Then, let's hear your report, Earl Tohno.” (Imeraria)

Like this Orsongrande started the meeting of the three countries.



Each member of the emissaries from Vichy was provided a room for lodging purposes and all of them had a room for things like meetings *etc.*

During the time they expected Roshi, who is their representative, to be at the conference, all of the 10 attendants decided to gather here and be on standby. As they shouldn't freely walk around within the castle of a foreign nation and without eating the prepared light meal either, the attendants talked with each other in lowered voices.

“... Before entering the castle, I tried to have a look at the situation in the city, but no matter how you look at it, it hasn't an air of being in war.”

A single of them mutters a few words. Although he has a trained body, it has been arranged that he is officially following as civil official of records keeping.

“It's not like the circulation of good and money has been stopped either. There was the gossip of refugees coming and going from the direction of Horant, but that hasn't caused the city to fall into chaos either. It was really “only coming and going.””

“There was a rumour that generally the destination of those refugees was the Fokalore territory...”

The “refugees”, appearing in their procured gossips, are the former soldiers of Horant, who have already arrived in Fokalore, and those escaping after the defeat of Horant. The real meaning of the information about the refugees has been mixed up.

“Won’t our country end up being completely shaved off by Fokalore, if it stays like this? Didn’t a new defecting city appear just a few days ago? Not only Pursang, it won’t be even strange for someone else to double-cross the central committee once again.”

“Don’t say anything careless.”

However, since all of them are thinking about the same thing with a difference in seriousness, no further words of remonstrance are spoken.

“Captain, shouldn’t we return to our own country to relay the state of affairs either way? It won’t solve anything even if we stay here as is. Roshi, that guy, won’t be even able to directly talk with the prime minister, not to mention the princess, will he?”

“Don’t call me captain. You don’t know who might be listening in.”

“You worry too much.”

Although he was warned by the oldest man, the young man ended up laughing.

However, there’s definitely someone here eavesdropping on their talks and observing them.

(They aren’t simple attendants after all, huh... ?) (Vaiya)

Similar to the location of the conference, a unit, led by Vaiya, was monitoring them from a hidden pathway. As there's also a chance of the other side possessing weapons this time, they are monitoring with the same number as there are attendants, 10, split up in 3 places.

“... Depending on the situation, we will kill Roshi.”

“That is...”

Everyone gulped due to the words spoken by the man called captain.

“If we are able to cleverly pin the crime on Earl Tohno once it becomes a diplomatic issue, our country's position will become slightly better. ... I have obtained the permission from central to go as far as making such judgement.”

“However, will it go that smoothly? Our opponent is that Earl Tohno.”

“Although he might be called powerful, if he causes a diplomatic issue, he won't be able to avoid getting criticized. At the very least his influence within this country will fall. He should loose the leeway to pay attention to betraying cities and to support Pursang.”

“Since his name as hero has been spreading, it will be easy to propagate this kind of scandal”, the captain explained. Though he smiled wryly as that was the explanation he had been provided by the central committee.

Under the preamble that Vichy's position likely won't improve, if the conference finishes in disagreement, they began to discuss in order to create a situation of “if Roshi is killed, Hifumi would fall into disgrace.”

Vaiya, who heard that from his hiding place, made a complicated face.

The knight next to him addressed him in a low voice.

“Vice-captain, they are trying to cause some incident within the castle...”

“Yea, seems so, but... do you think their hands will reach with Earl Tohno as opponent?”

“That’s likely futile. If the envoy was hostile, it won’t end with the attendants being sorry either. Beside, he probably doesn’t care about the evaluation from others.”

Due to the knight answering immediately and resolutely, Vaiya nodded while smiling bitterly.

“I think so, too. ... While you continue monitoring them, I will go and report about this to Earl Tohno and the captain for the time being.”

“As you’ve ordered.”

It doesn’t look like this will have its turn this time, Vaiya touched the shuriken in his pocket with a slightly regretful feeling.



In a yet different room within the castle, the nobles, who ended up being left outside the main faction of Orsongrande, were talking together face-to-face with glum expressions.

“At last, it’s the birth of a queen, huh... ?”

Though it should be an auspicious event, their tones and expressions were depressed.

No wonder, they were the nobles of the former prince faction, who barely preserved their roles within the castle. Due to the matter of the attempted assassination of the princes which should also be called the rampaging of the queen, all of their movements resulted in backfiring on them. They already ended up being weakened as far as to the degree of being ignored in regards to their influence.

Also, the prince faction, which previously commanded the majority of the nobles in the castle, has been decreased to the point of no more than the 5 in this room. Furthermore, combined with their low-ranking, with a Viscount being the most prominent, they are in a state, where you can even say that they have no influence at all.

The people, who after having lost their power, were dismissed from their duties and returned to their territory, were still well off. Those found to be corrupt after an investigation by the knight order, which had been completely reorganized as organization under the direct control of the princess, have been secretly “disposed off” behind the scenes or boldly in front of everyone as warning.

“I heard the envoy from the central committee of Vichy is currently carrying out a conference with the princess.”

“Originally, the nature of invading our country was an unnecessary act for Vichy and Horant. As result of Vichy currying favours with and tricking the nobles nobles of our country, including even us in this situation, this probably became a too big problem for the situation to be fairly beneficial. As for Horant, it was used as cause for destroying our knight orders, which were our combat potential.”

As a matter of fact the knights on duty were secretly listening to this conversation, however the knights, who were in three man cells, endured by rubbing their eyebrows with turning movements to lower their headaches as they exchanged looks at each other’s faces.

Making plans to get the aqua sapphire, which is a precious gem of this

country, past the national border by conspiring with Vichy and winning over Horant's magicians to this country are undoubtedly the responsibilities of nobles.

The fact, that the talks don't mention Hifumi here, is likely owed to their complete state of terror, the knights observed. They are able to agree with that.

"... In that case, since the envoy from Vichy is just right now in this castle, won't it also be fine to get them to cooperate one way or the other?"

"Cooperate, how?"

The middle-aged noble, as the eldest and with the highest peerage, bent himself forward listening as the young noble began his proposal while smiling broadly.

"We have to coordinate in order to obtain the duty of mediating the strengthening of relations with Vichy. Since we are in a situation of buying magic tools from Horant through Vichy, it means we will be able to make contact with those related to restoration in Vichy. The princess has to keep her appearance as the representative of the victorious nation, however if we can establish negotiations to guarantee the trade behind the scenes, we will be free from obstacles, including even the princess."

That suggestion was welcomed by everyone at this place as excellent plan by clapping on their knees.

"Though Earl Tohno is powerful, he is a rising noble. They won't be able to refuse us this part as we are nobles, who have full knowledge of diplomacy through our successive generations."

"Well, let's settle the details of the proposal right away. If it turns out

well, there's also the possibility of us rising in peerage.”

The knights softly sighed while looking at the nobles, who have smiling faces due to the cheerful topic, making plans carelessly. The knights understood well how the nobles selfishly didn't grasp reality.

Chapter 75: DreamGirls

The first conference of the three countries advanced in a way of mostly ignoring Vichy.

As Hifumi was basically only listening and as Imeraria and Suprangel talked about the main points, it was a situation, where Roshi only shyly voiced his opinion at the few times Imeraria brought up a subject and took him into consideration.

As result it reached a stage of Orsongrande and Horant tying a direct treaty of commerce once Horant paid a little amount of reparations. This also included the matter of building a military information exchange through Hifumi.

In regards to Vichy, Horant will continue the same degree of exchange as until now, but as a matter of fact the monopolistic circulation of magic tools would disappear. “As soon as you pay the reparations, you can request ‘cooperation towards peace’ from Orsongrande”, Imeraria stated as verbal message to the central committee.

“What does that cooperation towards peace concretely contain... ?”
(Roshi)

Although he spoke passionately that he would finalize the negotiations with Orsongrande by himself at first, Roshi, who completely dropped his shoulders at the final stages of the conference, timidly spoke his words to verify the ambiguous verbal message.

Showing her best smile, Imeraria returns in flat speech to Roshi,

“Concerning the war this time, our country considers the central committee to be fully responsible. And even concerning the situation of unnecessarily increasing the victims in Vichy itself and as result of that falling into a state close to collapse, we believe Vichy itself being the cause

by provoking a person it shouldn't have touched.” (Imeraria)

Speaking up to here, she turns a fleeting glance towards Hifumi. The person, who shouldn't be touched, showed an indifferent attitude as he yawned while being aware that he is being watched.

Imeraria took a small breath.

“Regarding the split, former Vichy region, including the central committee, I demand formal reparations, but above that I want them to come up with a plan by themselves. They shouldn't try to use me or my country in order to recover from their own mistakes. I call such behaviour simply disagreeable.” (Imeraria)

“Let's have talks once again after they came to a conclusion about what they should do before involving me in their own country's problems”, Imeraria clearly said.

Suprangel turned a gentle look at here I feel such girl is quite likeable.

“It is as the new Majesty the Queen says. The cleaning up of one's own country is something to be concluded by one's own country. If you rely on someone, it will naturally require an equal reward.” (Suprangel)

Even though Roshi, who ended up losing his position completely, began the conference to work out the details of a treaty, he was gently expelled from the location of the conference.

There wasn't anyone, who noticed Hifumi's gaze following Roshi as he faced towards the door in a hurry, giving a polite phrase for parting from the room, with a completely, dispirited look. Neither the matter of his mouth forming a smile.



Roshi, heading towards the rest room where his attendants are waiting, wasn't even accompanied by a single person guiding him. He can't take the statement as favourable, if he believes in it, at all. Roshi interpreted it as proof of being looked down on by Orsongrande itself and in reality his

treatment had just such meaning.

Walking trudgingly without saying a word, Roshi was called by someone.

“Excuse me, aren’t you the envoy from Vichy?”

“Haa, just as you say. You are?” (Roshi)

Roshi asked for the man’s name exposing his vigilance towards the middle-aged man, who suddenly appeared and started a conversation.

“I’m a Viscount of Orsongrande called Leonhart. You seem to be alone, what has happened to the guide from our country?” (Leonhart)

Roshi only frowned without answering Leonhart’s question.

“Certainly you don’t want to tell me that they haven’t assigned a guide to you, who came here as representative of your country, right? This is our country’s, no, the princess’ mistake! How to say it, although she’s still young, I want to apologise for the impoliteness on behalf of the princess. Let’s go, I will accompany you instead.” (Leonhart)

Receiving an apology that isn’t filled with a feeling of being an exaggerated gesture, Roshi doubted whether he is being made fun of.

“No, I will return myself. Thank you very much for your concerns.” (Roshi)

“No, not at all, there’s no need to hold back. ... As you look unwell for some reason, is there something wrong with your health as well?” (Leonhart)

Although Roshi almost clicked his tongue unintentionally, he withstood with an effort.

“I have been treated awfully by Her Highness the Princess at the conference just now. I felt depressed, if I consider that I have to report after returning to my own country.” (Roshi)

Though I didn't intend to be sarcastic, my words ended up having a feeling of being slightly malicious, but that doesn't really matter, does it? Roshi became defiant.

“My goodness... then, if you are able to build a connection with nobles from Orsongrande, won't it be possible for you to preserve your face a little bit, Envoy-dono?” (Leonhart)

“... What are you trying to say?” (Roshi)

“There aren't few nobles, who have been raising their eyebrows due to egoistic behaviour of the princess. If you don't mind, let's have a talk at a different place.” (Leonhart)

How suspicious, Roshi thought. Although he is certainly wearing finely tailored clothes befitting a noble, once I look at my conversation partner again, that middle-aged man gives off a feeling as if having some kind of misunderstanding with his faint smile and his somewhat dull appearance.

However, once I consider it in reverse, if he has approached me with the intention to use me, he might be useful in some way, he switches over his thinking. Even if I return to my country as is, I will have to take the blame for the breakdown in negotiations with Orsongrande and it's obvious that I will be transferred to a remote place.

“Well, then let's go to the room used by us. I want you to also extend your greetings to my attendants without fail.” (Roshi)

“Indeed, if you consider the matters from now on, it's indispensable to meet them. Then, let's go.” (Leonhart)

Roshi evaluated the noble's smile as suspicious, but he didn't notice that he was also showing the same face himself.



“Viscount Leonhart has come into contact with Vichy’s envoy. They went towards the room, where the attendants are waiting on standby. I believe it to be likely that they will carry out some kind of negotiations.”

Knight Captain Lotomago, who received the report in his office, only nodded without showing any particular reaction.

Seeing that, the knight continues his report.

“In the report from Royal Knight Order Vice-Captain Vaiya there was a mention about the possibility of Envoy Roshi to be killed by his attendants. ... It was mentioned that the Royal Knight Order is observing the progress attentively, but... this won’t result in the overlooking of a crime within the castle, right? Although they don’t belong to the main faction, there is a possibility of our country’s nobles being dragged into it. Dispatching the knight order here...”

“Balzephon. (T/N: Baruzefon <<)” (Lotomago)

The knight, who started to get heated up while talking, was reigned in with Lotomago calling his name.

“I will listen to the report. But, I have no intention to listen to your own personal opinion. The matters within the castle are decided by Imeraria-sama and the Royal Knight Order.” (Lotomago)

“However...” (Balzephon)

“Return to your duty. It’s good that you reported on something, you saw by chance. But, as our primary task is to finish the coronation ceremony safely tomorrow, we have to keep a watchful eye on things outside the castle.” (Lotomago)

“... Understood.” (Balzephon)

Balzephon has left the room reluctantly. However, the eyes he turned at me were filled with hatred, albeit only for an instant, Lotomago noticed.

Even Vaiya, who came entering as replacement, had this hateful gaze turned at him, but Vaiya, receiving it from behind, didn't notice.

“Please excuse me for my long silence, Captain Lotomago... Is Balzephon doing well at his new assignment?” (Vaiya)

“Do you know him?” (Lotomago)

Lotomago, urging him on to take a seat, told the maid to bring tea.

“Of course. We both were originally in the Second Knight Order. The time of recruitment is drawing near as well. ... Did something happen with him?” (Vaiya)

“No, I was just slightly worried. Leaving that aside, weren't you monitoring the lot from Vichy?” (Lotomago)

“We are alternating at a certain interval of time. There are no humans who possess the ability to concentrate for countless hours. If you are staying still in a dark and narrow place, you will end up feeling depressed.” (Vaiya)

Vaiya laughed and thankfully received the black tea offered by a maid. The maid, to whom he smiled, smiled with a slightly red face and lightly returned to a corner of the room.

“And, that means that something happened for Vichy's envoy to make a move.” (Vaiya)

“Indeed. Viscount Leonhart contacted Roshi, who was expelled from the conference. It looks like they entered Vichy's rest room, you monitored until just now, together.” (Lotomago)

“They made a move, huh? It was faster than I thought.” (Vaiya)

“What? So you knew about it?” (Lotomago)

Vaiya apologised with a “I’m sorry” to Lotomago, who exhaled his breath with a bored look.

“We have grasped it until the point that the remnants of the prince faction, such as Viscount Leonhart, are scheming to create a link with Vichy. ... Although I say that, as outcome of the conference today, they won’t achieve anything, even if they were able to make a connection with Vichy.” (Vaiya)

Vaiya was drinking the black tea with an atmosphere of composure, but Lotomago, remembering the eyes of Balzephon just now, felt some unpleasant sense of discomfort.

“Since we don’t know when an uproar might happen, we will continue to observe”, thanking for the tea, Vaiya left Lotomago’s office.

Brooding over it by himself for a short while, Lotomago slowly stood up, after sorting the documents in front of him, and left towards somewhere.



If you look down from the balcony of the castle, there is a plaza in front of the castle, which has been usually used by tourists and local residents as place of relaxation and refreshment to some degree. That plaza has been locked out for the general public and several soldiers are checking whether there are any suspicious people while moving in a quick march.

Those, who sometimes try to pass through, like merchants coming to deliver goods to the castle, received a more strict inspection than usual at a place further away from the castle as usual. But all of them are obediently accepting the inspections with a “It can’t be helped” written on their faces.

If you look towards the city from that plaza, you will see a lot more food

stalls than usual having set up at spots not belonging to the plaza. It appeared as if the population density of the city had risen.

Hifumi, who sat cross-legged on the railing of the balcony, is watching expressionlessly the activity of those people.

Although he is watching them, he isn't conscious of them.

He is in the middle of his daily meditation, but his thoughts are recalling the men and women he had killed so far. Slowly reflecting upon their final moments, he expresses his gratitude to them within his mind.

He had a premonition that he will once again kill some people within the castle at the coronation ceremony tomorrow or before that. Naturally a smile appears on his face.

As person following the path of martial arts (T/N: not carnage? o.O), this is something joyful. So far I have killed many people. I was able to prove that the techniques, I refined, were the real deal. And, even after this, I will also kill many people, I guess. As he thinks about that, his mind becomes calm. As if a water's surface without a single ripple, a gentle mood spreads in his chest.

Suddenly Hifumi raised his face and looked westward.

On the other side of the city, before the horizon becomes a blur, there is a prairie area, where the beastman race lives, I was previously told by Sabnak. He said there are elves in the adjoining forest, too.

It seems there are countries, where humans live, even further beyond the prairie.

I heard that the beastmen are strong.

I wonder what kind of battle style they use.

Do they use weapons? Do they use fangs and claws? I wonder if there are possibly some who can fly.

“That's it. I will go to the prairie once the coronation ceremony has finished.” (Hifumi)

I will buy plenty of food, stuff it in my darkness storage, buy a horse and go there by myself. It's fine if I leave the matters of the territory to Caim's

group. Let's have Prufas make another weapon as well, when I'm close to the territory.

It was a feeling as if looking forward to a picnic.

“Hifumi-san.” (Alyssa)

It was Alyssa coming out to the balcony.

With her ice blue pupils shining within her red, frizzy hair, she is laughing happily.

“Somehow you seem to be happy. Did something good happen?”
(Alyssa)

“Something good? There are only good things since I came to this world. I'm looking forward to the enjoyable things from now on, too, I guess.” (Hifumi)

“Is that so?” (Alyssa)

Jumping up without effort, she sat down next to Hifumi.



“Horant’s king-sama will return home once the coronation ceremony has finished. Then I will return to Fokalore.” (Alyssa)

“I see.” (Hifumi)

“Is there something I should do once I return?” (Alyssa)

She comes asking with a familiarity as if checking the details for helping out, but even though things may appear this way, it’s a meeting between feudal lord and the one in charge of military affairs. Though both of them are considering it to be fine like this.

“Let’s see. Since there will likely powerful monsters appear close to Fokalore for a while, it’s probably necessary to prepare for them. As I will temporarily go to Fokalore as well, I will instruct you on-site.” (Hifumi)

“Uh huh. I wonder if Origa-san is healthy.” (Alyssa)

“Well, she’s probably fine. Since she will probably return to Fokalore sooner or later, it’s fine for you to listen to various stories from her, once she came back.” (Hifumi)

“As the situation differs depending whether your opponent is human or beast, the stories of Origa, who experienced it herself, might be of use as reference for the troops”, Hifumi says.

Nodding obediently, Alyssa laughed and said “it would be nice if she returned quickly.”

“Hifumi-san, will you do your job as feudal lord-sama after returning to the territory? Since it appears that Phyrinion-san is getting married, she won’t be able to work anymore.” (Alyssa)

“For things like the administration of the territory the top will only become a decoration if the general staff grows up. With me being me, I plan to go looking for interesting things.” (Hifumi)

“The interesting things you are talking about, Hifumi-san...” (Alyssa)

Alyssa made a difficult face and a *monyomo* was visible on her face.

I don’t have any intention to directly criticize Hifumi’s preferences. And I’m also thankful for the matter of being rescued, but I don’t think I want to actively kill for the sake of Hifumi like Origa.

“Oh well, first I shall enjoy the things happening from now. It’s fine for you to stick to Sabnak. It might give you an interesting experience.” (Hifumi)

“Understood. Greet me once you come back to Fokalore, ok? It’s unpleasant to be left behind.” (Alyssa)

Alyssa quickly jumped off the railing and dashed away in the twinkling of an eye.

“Well, I think I should sleep a bit before it’s too late.” (Hifumi)

Retrieving a sweetened bun from his darkness storage, Hifumi silently vanished inside the castle while chewing with a sound of munching.

Chapter 76: Rebellion

The population of Fokalore has in fact increased three times after the change of feudal lords. Although its number has gone up quite a bit due to immigrants and refugees, the release of an early phase of a population management system and because there was a considerable number of residents, who were the kind to spend money coming from outside for the sake of education, an overall balance was attained.

Those related to commerce and industry have been outstandingly developing their sales proficiency and productivity even if compared to outside the country, let alone the domestic companies.

By Hifumi's instruction a license system for businesses has been set up. The tax system has been changed to declaring the taxes owed each time. The feudal lord has completely seized the opportunity to circulate goods and money from city to city within the territory by using the rail cars. Even just the sales from this enterprise are contributing to the territory's operation heavily.

As for the industry, the standards have been unified for the first time in this world. Due to the "screw", which had been invented by Hifumi, carpenters and ironworkers experienced a great upheaval. Until then it was popular to affix things irreversibly by using nails or welding, but with the introduction of screws and by explosively spreading the industrial products, which were standardized, hasty people are starting to say things like 「Fokalore creates the standards of all industrial products」.

But it's not only the aspect of knowledge. All territories are also closely observing its military parts. Staying for the sake of participating in the training of each unit, the money spent in the cities is increasing as result.

Fokalore gathered the attention and its population is growing. As outcome, the staff members and the civil official slaves, who were controlling them, became busy once again.

“Gigigi...” (Miyukare)

Miyukare, being the sole civil official slave in charge of military affairs, is finishing the documents with a dreadful expression while holding down her temper.

In the space for the sake of the civil official slaves performing their official duties, Miyukare, without even concealing her ill humour, processed the documents with a sound of the pen scribbling across the papers rapidly. Doelgar and Paryu were in the room as well, but both of them are doing their jobs in silence.

“You know...” (Doelgar)

“What?!” (Miyukare)

Miyukare turns her sight as if pouncing down on him towards Doelgar, who timidly called out to her.

“Don’t glare at me like that... Lord-sama told us that he agrees about the retired soldiers. We were able to procure the participation of the ironworkers, too.” (Doelgar)

“Right. Then, I will notify the soldiers, who are considering to retire, and have them introduced to the industry guild as applicants.” (Miyukare)

“Uh huh, I leave it to you.” (Doelgar)

Once he finished his business, Doelgar left as if running away by saying 「I will go report it to the guild」.

“Excuse me.”

A single staff member came entering as replacement, but seeing Miyukare’s expression, he made a startled face for an instant. He went

towards Paryu's desk at a quick pace.

Paryu, who raised her face, has her violet eyes half closed as if being drowsy, but the staff member doesn't particularly mind it as it is the usual and hands her the documents, he held in his hands.

“Paryu-san, a message from the capital came.”

“Thank you very much. I will check it, okay?” (Paryu)

Once the staff member has left, Paryu looks over the documents given to her. Becoming completely familiar with dealing with paperwork and drawing up a family register, she reads through the documents quickly. She grasps the contents, written down on one sheet of the documents, in several seconds. It's not at the level of Caim, but her documents throughput is high amongst the staff members of the territory.

“... Miyukare-san. As soon as the coronation ceremony in the capital finishes, Director of Military Affairs Alyssa will return, it seems.” (Paryu)

Miyukare stood up with a force that knocked down the chair due to Paryu's words, which were conveyed without any preface at all.

“Really!?” (Miyukare)

“Unless this document is a forgery. Since it has Lord-sama's usual, unreadable signature, I believe there's no mistake to that.” (Paryu)

“In that case, it's alright! It's indispensable to throw a welcome home party, right!?” (Miyukare)

“Will the restaurant at that place be fine? Is it even better to reserve a hotel?” Towards Miyukare, who shows a slovenly face and says exactly these words with a smile or rather a broad grin, Paryu decided to consider this to be already an illness. An incurable illness, that is.

“Lord-sama will come back as well. Since he’s coming back leading several soldiers he was entrusted with by Vichy, we’ve been told to prepare their participation in military training. I will find a boarding house for them but since there’s no one but you, Miyukare-san, who can put them into a training schedule, please do that, ok?” (Paryu)

“Leave it to me! There shouldn’t be much time, right? When was the coronation ceremony?” (Miyukare)

“It’s today.” (Paryu)



Viscount Leonhart coming in contact with Roshi is a move trying to create a link to Vichy. It was leaked to the Royal Knight Order, monitoring within the castle.

The day before, at the time when Leonhart had the first session of discussions together with the attendants of Vichy, he said 「there are also other nobles, who are hoping to form a friendly relationship with your country」. Hoping for a conference with the other nobles before the coronation ceremony and as result of Roshi also agreeing to that, it had been decided to let them freely do it in order to arrest the whole lot at once.

And today, just like yesterday, with the scene playing out at the rest room, provided for the envoy of Vichy, their conference started.

The nobles politely greeted Roshi in turns, in a modest manner which didn’t seem noble-like.

On the other hand, although Roshi seems to intend being plenty cautious, there’s a necessity for results to come out here. The commander of the attendants, who made sure to be slightly separated from them, calmly saw through him obviously being impatient.

“The attendants are nothing more than extras”, it was convenient for the attendants that the nobles from Orsongrade failed to even exchange a decent amount of words with them. No one cared about them even as they moved stealthily to their places and blocked the entrance of the room’s door.

Only Vaiya, who was monitoring them secretly, noticed those movements.

“Well then, even though it’s sudden, let’s discuss the shape of our friendship.” (Leonhart)

The discussions advance in a way of Leonhart taking the lead.

“If we get right to the point, for our country I consider it satisfactory if we proceed with the previous set up circulation of goods and money towards Orsongrande.” (Roshi)

As the nobles are showing that they haven’t understood Roshi’s words right away, Leonhart inquires about his real intention.

“There is also a possibility of our country’s merchants being restricted from entering your country from now on. It will likely be difficult to sell the merchandise of a hostile nation. Accordingly, we can have someone buy them temporarily if we are able to set up a selling agency within Orsongrande.” (Roshi)

Even while expressing their understanding as I went this far to put it into words, their reaction is weak and lacking. Won’t they be able to understand it unless I tell them directly? Roshi was getting irritated within his mind.

“... Of course, if you were to agree to the cooperation, there is no doubt that you will be able to secure large profit margins at the time of selling the items in your country since we will sell the merchandise cheaply to you wholesale.” (Roshi)

“Oh, this a great suggestion! On top of a cooperation, you go even as far as offering us profits, Roshi-dono.” (Leonhart)

“It’s a truly thoughtful story!”

The nobles, who at last comprehended the benefits after he explained

up to there, are praising Roshi unanimously while exchanging glances amongst each other inquiring about the timing of the contest over the profits.

(Are these guys really nobles?) (Attendant's commander)

The commander of the attendants watched these exchanges while being disgusted from the bottom of his heart. Speaking of nobles, he thought of them as a group pointlessly and flowery talking about their love for their country while holding money and authority, though unable to hide even a single part of their desire through their thin skin.

In this case, Vichy's merchants are 100 times better at talking while hiding their greed, the commander evaluated.

Shifting his line of view, he secretly gave the other attendants the sign to carry out the plan. Some nodded silently. Those being outside the noble's view have already drawn their hands to their sword's hilts.

“Then, let's talk about the details and volume of the business right away...” (Leonhart)

Leonhart, whose laughter changed into a broad grin, bent himself forward. With Roshi being in front of him on the other side, he can see the attendant's commander raising his sword overhead. In the next moment Leonhart's face is sullied by a spray of blood.

“Bad luck, we will end the play-friends game here.”

Being deeply cut into the head, Roshi died instantly. The commander, who stepped over his corpse, which fell off the chair, prepared his blood-soaked sword.

“B-Bastard! Your own country's envoy...” (Leonhart)

“U-Uwaa!”

While he was about to attack Leonhart, the other nobles, who were surprised by the bloody event, are scrambling for running away and head towards the door visibly tumbling about. However, even there they have been awaited by attendants standing in the way.

“Hii...”

“Have everyone here die. As the discussions haven’t gone well, the enraged nobles of Orsongrande have stabbed Roshi with knives. Even though we were able to somehow counterattack, Roshi has passed away. You guys have passed away, too. That’s how it will go.”

At the moment he pointed the sword at Leonhart, who has lost the ability to say anything due to surprise, a shuriken came flying from who-knows-where and pierced into the commander’s right arm. The impact caused his sword to leap out of his hands.

“Ugu!? What the heck!?”

While being bewildered by the unknown piece of metal that pierced his arm, an avalanche of knights flowed out of the hidden pathway. In the blink of an eye the situation within the room changed into a state of fighting.

Vaiya, who threw the shuriken, jumped in front of the commander holding a kusarigama in his hand.

“We are Orsongrande’s Royal Knight Order. There is a necessity for us to deal with this lot (the nobles). We will also restrain you for the crime of drawing your swords within the castle. If you surrender, we won’t kill you.” (Vaiya)

“Are you an idiot!? There’s no way we will surrender just because you tell us to do so!” (Commander)

The commander, who picked up his sword with his left hand while yelling, had his face severely struck by the counterweight thrown by Vaiya as he turned around.

Dropping his sword once again, he fainted by being hit with the sickle's hilt as he was holding his face.

Although several of his group's members were injured as well, all of the attendants were successfully arrested without being killed. For the knights, who are wearing armours, the attendants, who wear nothing more but simple clothes, were almost no contest.

“W-We are saved...” (Leonhart)

Vaiya stands in front of Leonhart, who sighed in relief while sitting down unable to stand up due to fear.

“Are you someone from the knight orders? You have my thanks.”
(Leonhart)

“It seems you are misunderstanding something here though.” (Vaiya)

Vaiya changes from holding the kusarigama to holding a rope.

“You are a target for arrest as well. During the time until you receive your punishments from the new queen, I will have you obediently wait in prison.” (Vaiya)

“W-What foolish thing to say! What kind of crime did...” (Leonhart)

“You have been tolerated since you are harmless. If you were harmful, you would have been removed by now.” (Vaiya)

Vaiya, who quickly tied up Leonhart, gave the order to put him together with the other nobles into the prison managed by the knight order.

Even Roshi's fallen corpse is quickly disposed of by the knight order. In

the meanwhile Vaiya constantly paid an undue amount of attention to his surroundings.

“Did something happen, Vice-Captain?”

“No... I thought Earl Tohno would appear because of a battle scene like this, but... well, it's fine, I guess. The coronation ceremony will start soon. We will entrust the conspicuous places to Captain Sabnak. We will continue to monitor from the shadows then.” (Vaiya)

Hearing Vaiya's words, the knights headed quickly towards their stations.



One hour before the coronation ceremony.

It was Imeraria's office where an incident started.

“Excuse me.”

“You are ... if I remember correctly, you were someone from the knight order. I believe you were in charge of guarding outside the castle, but did something happen?” (Imeraria)

It was Balzephon, affiliated to the knight order, who visited the office.

Imeraria, who felt doubts about a knight, whom she hardly ever met, suddenly visiting, experienced some uncomfortable feeling.

Balzephon, who quickly surveyed the room while entering, stood in front of Imeraria and bowed respectfully. But, he didn't choose to kneel following the etiquette of retainers.

The maids, who were close-by, are surprised by his unbelievably impolite attitude. At the moment Imeraria tried to open her mouth to warn him that he should be more careful, Balzephon spoke first.

“Your Highness, I’m called Balzephon. I was a member of the Second Knight Order, but now I belong to the unified knight order. Just as Your Highness’ said, the Royal Knight Order is protecting inside the castle and we are to guard outside the castle. ... However.” (Balzephon)

Balzephon took a straight look at Imeraria with forceful eyes.

“Why is a former member of the Third Knight Order the captain of the Royal Knight Order? Isn’t that person only talented at flattering up to Earl Tohno without even being able to properly handle a sword? Although the vice-captain is Vaiya, that person is an imbecile, who only does what he’s told. He was never entrusted any important tasks at the Second Knight Order.” (Balzephon)

“... It looks like you are unhappy with my human resources. However, your manner of handling that is disrespectful. Quickly leave this room and I will overlook this situation.” (Imeraria)

Balzephon, who received that advice, laughed scornfully with a “Humph.”

“No, I’m the one controlling this situation... no, we are. I will have you obediently stay in this room. Given that there will be a small cleaning within the castle after this, during that time, let’s get you ready to spend your entire life’s time as puppet queen hereafter.” (Balzephon)

“What are you saying... ?” (Imeraria)

Once Imeraria voiced her doubt, the knight, who stood at her side, suddenly drew his sword and thrust it at Imeraria.

“! ... You are!” (Imeraria)

The knight slightly falters due to her stern glare, but he doesn’t lower the sword.

“Just like me, he is originally from the Second Knight Order. It was difficult to create an opportunity where Sabnak and the bunch of the former Third Knight Order isn’t present. The nobles are nothing but dumb. They were unusable incompetents even for acting as decoys with Vichy’s group.” (Balzephon)

“You were called Balzephon, right? What’s your goal?” (Imeraria)

With this, it’s the second time I have a sword thrust in front of me. Compared to the blood-lust I faced from Hifumi at that time, there isn’t anything like that present currently, she persuaded herself. Having calmed down, Imeraria asked a question.

“Honour.” (Balzephon)

“Eh?” (Imeraria)

“For us knights it is honourable to win by fighting our enemies fair and square. It’s not to be pleased with not knowing how to wield a weapon like Vaiya and neither is it to record useless conversations while stealthily peeping from the shadows like the bunch from the Third Knight Order. Originally it all became ridiculous starting with Your Highness appointing that man to a responsible post. We only want to reset that.” (Balzephon)

The other knights, who were present in the room, also drew their swords. The frightened maids gathered at one spot.

“Right now our other companions are likely getting rid of Sabnak and Lotomago. Once we suppressed the bunch of the former Third Knight Order, we will have Your Highness grandly announce this feat to the citizens.” (Balzephon)

Balzephon is elated of himself, Imeraria judged.

“Earl Tohno will be banished from this country. Regarding Vichy and Horant, who caused a pointless war, they will receive punishment from

the knight order in addition to the reparations.” (Balzephon)

“Can you hold onto your honour as knight with such meaningless action?” (Imeraria)

Once Imeraria asked as if being disgusted, Balzephon quickly approached her and hit Imeraria’s cheek with his open hand.

Even the knight thrusting the sword at her was surprised by that, but he kept his mouth shut while glaring.

“Though it was the responsibility of these countries to meaninglessly decrease our knight order, don’t you agree? This will also serve as memorial service for the First and Second Knight Order, who died in the fight against Horant. I won’t allow you to insult that.” (Balzephon)

While enduring the pain of her cheek, Imeraria worried more about Hifumi’s situation than that of the man in front of her. I don’t know what kind of mess that man will cause by taking advantage of these circumstances.

The rebellion of the knights silently began before the coronation ceremony.

Arc 10: Things like Coronations, Rebellions and Marriages

Chapter 77: Bad Day

It was because of the strange noise audible on the other side of the wall that caused Lotomago to notice the abnormality.

Suddenly hearing a sound of something hard hitting the wall, silence returned thereafter.

Lotomago has also been aware of the hidden pathways on the other side of the wall. He even knows that sometimes someone from the Royal Knight Order has been passing through there. Or rather Sabnak had consulted him about the permission to use it for travelling and he readily agreed.

“Is someone there?” (Lotomago)

Lotomago, feeling restless due to not receiving an answer, stood up. He told the maid to leave the room and call for some knights, but it was too late.

“Excuse me, Captain.”

It was 3 knights who entered the room without knocking. While they had already drawn their swords, one of them forced the maid to sit down in a corner of the room.

Turning her sight to Lotomago, the maid moved as she had been ordered by the knight.

Furthermore, around five knights entered from the exit of the hidden pathway.

A single one amongst them has been bathed in a spurt of blood.

“... That’s quite the appearance, but what’s your business?” (Lotomago)

“Well, it’s something simple. We want you to hold still here until everything has ended including you losing that position. That is your last task as captain.”

The knight, who entered first, explains calmly. Seeing Lotomago’s sight resting on the knight bathed in a spurt of blood, he laughs scornfully.

“As there were two knights on the other side of the wall intended to be your guards, we got rid of them.”

“You bastards...” (Lotomago)

“Uh-oh, please don’t resist pointlessly.”

Putting the sword, he held in his hand, at the throat of Lotomago, he says,

“If you don’t oppose us, we will safely release you as well as that maid. After you lost your position. Also, apart from that, we will loose our leeway if you resist too much, okay? We will be compelled to change our way of treatment not only towards you, Captain, but also towards Imeraria-sama.”

Looking at the maid, who is sitting down in a frightened state, Lotomago sighed and reseated himself on his chair.

“I don’t know what you’re planning to do, but... Balzephon, huh?”

(Lotomago)

“Oya, it looks like you have suspected something. However, there’s no need for you to think about unnecessary things, Captain. Please wait obediently until we change this country and a new era begins.”

The intruding knights are grinning broadly while surrounding Lotomago.

The sighing Lotomago closed his eyes.

“It seems like there’s nothing I can do right now to change the situation here. As you said, I have decided to wait.” (Lotomago)

“A wise choice.”

The knights, confirming that there were no weapons close to Lotomago, left 3 behind and exited the room.

Lotomago, who watched their actions silently, gave more than a passing thought to the fate of these fools. Yesterday, Lotomago, sensing the uneasiness he felt from Balzephon’s state, discussed that matter with Hifumi.

He recalls the face of Hifumi at that time.

He only said nothing more but 「Understood」, but his expression showed an innocent smile as if being a child having received a present.



“Ahhahaha!”

Suddenly hearing the laughter from the other side of the wall, the shoulders of Suprangel, who had a friendly chat with Nelgal, jumped in surprised.

“... Are they holding a party in the next room?” (Suprangel)

“I-I don’t know, but...” (Nelgal)

Isn’t this guy a bit too serious in replying to a joke? Suprangel pouts. Although he asked the maids within the room, they apparently aren’t aware of the circumstances either.

Since they don’t know what to do, they are patiently waiting inside the room. After a knock people entered. It’s the soldiers of Fokalore led by Alyssa.

“Hello, King-sama.” (Alyssa)

“Oh, the young lady from Fokalore, eh? What the heck is happening?” (Suprangel)

Apparently Suprangel was pleased with Alyssa’s simple-mindedness. He showed a facial expression of a good-natured old man towards her.

At the time he made this face for the first time, the servants from Horant, including Nelgal, made all together surprised faces, but by now they have already accepted it.

“Umm~ Hifumi-san has said a “rebellion” is starting. We came to guard King-sama.” (Alyssa)

“Rebellion? Despite the king of a foreign country being here? Oh well, it’s because I came quite abruptly. I will be able to feel safe, if it’s the young lady’s group protecting me.” (Suprangel)

“That’s right. Military Director Alyssa-dono, please treat our king well.” (Nelgal)

Nelgal, who quickly got up, very deeply bowed towards Alyssa, who was around two heads smaller than him.

“It’s alright, it’s not only king-sama. We’ve been told to protect all of you. For the time being, the people, who monitored this place, aren’t here anymore.” (Alyssa)

When Alyssa said that, Fokalore’s territorial soldiers dragged two limp knights out through a hidden door while laughing.

“Ah, director! We have cleared the enemy and gained total control over the hidden pathway. These guys were full of openings to a laughable degree compared to Lord-sama.”

“... I think you are making a mistake in the party you compare them to. Please continue to guard the pathway, okay? Tie the knight-san’s and lay them down in the pathway. The same for the other people as well, as planned.” (Alyssa)

“Roger!”

“At last it’s actual combat after we went sightseeing in Horant”, the soldiers chatted lightly while they guarded inside and outside the room.

Hearing that, Nelgal is frowning.

“... Hidden pathway? Did you monitor us?” (Nelgal)

Towards Nelgal, who speaks as if subduing his anger, it was not Alyssa but Suprangel who moved and hit him with an iron knuckle (T/N: ゲンコツ is hitting someone from above with a fist on the head often seen in manga and such as punishment for someone making a rude remark)

“Ouch!” (Nelgal)

“Idiot. It’s only natural to inconspicuously monitor for the sake of guarding and precaution. Despite the young lady’s group originally has no obligation to come protect us within the castle, what’s your manner of

talking?! ... Excuse me for my dimwitted successor.” (Suprangel)

“Er, well... It isn't us who monitored you, but I can understand the unpleasant feeling of it.” (Alyssa)

“I'm very sorry...” (Nelgal)

Nelgal, whose head was completely hanging, hasn't noticed Suprangel clearly mention him as “successor” to someone else.

There's still some way to go before the goal*, Suprangel felt disappointed. (T/N: “madamadadane” those of you who watched prince of tennis will probably know this term very well ^^)

“So, what's the matter with Hifumi-dono? If it's that man, he's someone to stand at the vanguard of such fighting scene.” (Suprangel)

Due to Suprangel's question Alyssa folded her arms and tilted her head to the side.

“That is, I don't know where he went. He only gave me my orders and ran off somewhere.” (Alyssa)

“Ho, that is...” (Suprangel)

Suprangel strokes his chin and laughs broadly.

“It looks like it will result in something enjoyable.” (Suprangel)



Vaiya was in a hurry.

With several knights not coming back at the time of their shift change and the person, who went to check, not returning either, there was no one to send to gather information either.

“What’s happening?” (Vaiya)

He judges it to doubtlessly be an abnormal situation. While feeling it to be inexcusable for the preparations of the guarding of the coronation ceremony, he has ordered the other knights to investigate and headed towards Sabnak’s room at a quick pace accompanied by a single knight for the sake of communication.

As he advances while feeling irritated by the long hallway, he finally reached the place that serves as Sabnak’s office. Several knights are gathering in front of its door.

Among them were also the figures of people who were reported to be missing.

Once a single knight became aware of Vaiya, he put his hand on the swords at his hips and approached.

“Just when I wondered who it was, isn’t it the Royal Knight Order’s Vice Captain-sama?”

“You, eh... ?” (Vaiya)

Vaiya remembered the man in front of him.

As colleague from the time at the Second Knight Order, he didn’t have many chances to meet him, but he was a person in the higher ranks within the order in regards to his mastery of the sword. At the time of Horant’s attack he was summoned to his family’s home and shouldn’t have participated in the battles, but apparently he came back without Vaiya knowing about it.

“I was surprised when I came back. The Second Knight Order has disappeared, something like a Royal Knight Order has been formed, Vaiya became a vice-captain and that ... fellow from the Third Knight Order became the captain.”

Due to the other party talking as if making fun of it, Vaiya makes an effort and replies calmly,

“If you don’t like the changes, it’s fine for you to stop being a knight and go home. There’s no one stopping you.” (Vaiya)

“Don’t fuck with me! Though you are a traitor, who curried favours with the Third Knight Order! In spite of using swords to protect the nation, that man brought in weird weapons and spread them dirtying the dignity of knights. They stopped being knights.”

The other knights, agreeing with his words, shouted abuses at Vaiya and the Third Knight Order all over.

“... I feel I finally understood Earl Tohno’s meaning of disciplining the soldiers. I guess this is the reason why the Second Knight Order was defeated whereas Fokalore’s soldiers won the war.” (Vaiya)

“Humph, as expected of you, Vice-Captain. You seem to be skilled at talking. However, that’s how far it goes.”

Suddenly a pain ran through Vaiya’s back of the head.

Once he turned around while eagerly preserving to keep his consciousness, which was about to become hazy, he saw the knight, who accompanied him, there, although he stood holding his sword, still stuck in its scabbard.

Although he didn’t see his expression due to his blurry vision, he only realised one thing; him being a traitor belonging to the same organization too. While clenching his teeth and lamenting over his lack of a discerning eye, Vaiya lost his consciousness.

There was only one thing bothering him. Something had quietly passed him at the edge of his vision as he was on the brink of collapsing. As it was a person he has a recollection of wearing strange clothes with a wide hem, he heard a voice reprimanding him 「You don’t pay enough attention」.



Just before Vaiya finally arrived at Sabnak's office, Sabnak swiftly drew his sword and confronted the knights who rushed into his room as opponents.

Slaying the knight, who tried a surprise attack, he has fallen over at Sabnak's side.

"Tsk. Being done in by the level of someone of the Third Knight Order..."

The knight, who cursed looking at the corpse loathsomely, glares at Sabnak while holding his sword.

In addition there are two more knights there as well. One of them had turned his sword towards the maid, Shibyura, who was within the room.

"You came entering quite unexpectedly causing quite the situation, but what's your business with me? Since I'm busy I'd like you to keep it short though, okay?" (Sabnak)

Sabnak was sweating buckets while cracking a joke.

He was somehow able to deal with the sudden attack as result of receiving coaching from Hifumi, but Sabnak, who has no more than the level of skill to decently compete with the lower ranks of the knight order, has only a small chance of winning.

"We want you bastard to become a sacrifice in order to establish a new knight order organization. Princess Imeraria will announce the new system at the coronation ceremony afterwards. It is expected for the Second Knight Order to play a central part in the creation of the new system. For that reason, Lotomago and you asshole are nuisances."

"Did you go to the captain's place as well... ?" (Sabnak)

“No worries, once he’s of no use, Lotomago will also follow you in death.”

With these words he swung his sword. Sabnak repelled it in an unsteady manner of using his hands.

“How long will you survive against two opponents? In the end it’s a test of your luck.”

“Kuu...”

Sabnak, who retreated to a corner of the room as if rolling over, was one way or the other successful in avoiding a state of being pincer-attacked.

However, while dealing with the two in the front, his wounds are slowly increasing.

“Come on, come on! Do you wish to be tormented to death as it is?”

“I hope to find a way to not die. I still haven’t even been married yet.”
(Sabnak)

“Don’t get cocky!”

The sword of the enraged knight cut open Sabnak’s knee.

Sabnak, losing the way to stand up, somehow supported his body with the remaining, unhurt knee and defended against the sword swung down at his head.

The sword, carrying its own weight, gradually forced him down.

At that moment a scream could be heard at another place.

“Uwah!”

Once the knight, who isn't entangled with Sabnak looked back, he saw the knight, who had watched Shibyura, fallen. Shibyura stood there holding a knife in her hands while trembling.

“You bitch!”

As the knight, brandishing his sword, approaches her, Shibyura closes her eyes and starts running passing by his side.

“What?”

Once the ignored knight turned his sight in a hurry, he could see Shibyura headed towards the figure of his companion, who put even more weight into his sword to kill Sabnak.

“Watch your back!”

He called out in panic, but it was too late.

Shibyura, grasping her knife tightly, hurled herself into the flank of the knight and stabbed the blade deeply into the un-armoured part.

“Uh?! Y-You bitch!”

Shibyura let go of the knife and clung to Sabnak. The knight, who had the knife buried in his flank, raised his sword overhead and slashed not at Sabnak but Shibyura's back.

“Shibyura!” (Sabnak)

Holding Shibyura, who has limply collapsed towards him, Sabnak screamed, but Shibyura, shedding large quantities of blood, breathed out dripping in sweat.



“Though to protect... someone important... hesitated... no good...”
(Shibyura)

“Don’t talk recklessly! Cling to your consciousness strongly!” (Sabnak)

The knight, who had his flank stabbed, has fainted in agony. The remaining knight is approaching in rage.

“You dare to turn your blade at a knight! You, with a standing as maid!”

But, this yell became the knight’s last words.

The instant he finished saying them, the point of a katana stuck out from his throat.

Without even understanding what has happened to him, he writhes vomiting blood and before long he has parted this world.

Immediately following a little bottle came flying and hit Shibyura’s chin.

“Ugo.”

Sabnak, grasping the bottle in a hurry, realizes the true nature of it. Opening it quickly, he pours it on Shibyura’s back.

The wound on the back of Shibyura, who endured the pain with a frown, is healed in a twinkle.

Seeing this, Sabnak sighed in relief and looked up at the person who threw the magic potion.

“High-class magic potions have an amazing effect, Hifumi-san.”
(Sabnak)

Hifumi, who finished off the remaining two knights, sheathed his katana and sat down on the sofa.

“Rather than something like that, I’d like you to give me a bit tea. If a person goes on a rampage, they will get thirsty. Ah, also, since Vaiya has collapsed in the hallway, retrieve him before someone steps on him.”

(Hifumi)

“Though that’s difficult...” (Sabnak)

Gently laying down the fainted Shibyura, whose breathing has calmed down after the wound healed, Sabnak smiled bitterly.

“She ended up using all of the magic potion. My knee is cut without change. To be blunt, it awfully painful making it impossible to stand up.”
(Sabnak)

An additional bottle hit Sabnak’s forehead.

Chapter 78: Dance Floor Anthem

A knight unit appeared in Prime Minister Adol's room as well, but because they believed him to become an unlikely combat potential, he was postponed as target of the knight unit.

For that reason, at the time the knights broke into Lotomago's room and concluded gaining total control, it was already after the guard system of the Fokalore soldiers was put in place.

“Wh...”

Seeing the about 10 in total Fokalore soldiers, with some among them even holding kusarigama's, swords and spears, crowding the room, the knight unit, which consisted of 5 knights, lost their speech when they vigorously charged into the room.

On the other hand, the Fokalore soldiers jumped into complaining severally.

“Slo~w.”

“You will be treated as apprentices in the Fokalore territorial army with such movements.”

“You came entering without even drawing your swords. Are you morons?”

“Rather, too many have been assigned to this small room, right?”

“Are you making fun of Military Director Alyssa?”

“Of course not.”

Due to the Fokalore soldiers chaotically clamouring about, the knights believed to be made fools of and shouted “Shut up!”

“From where did you bastards enter!? The soldiers are in charge of guarding outside the castle, aren’t they!?”

While laying his hand on his sword’s hilt, the leading knight spit out these words. A counterweight sunk into his face.

Watching the swooning knight, who is spewing out his front teeth and bleeding from the nose, his colleagues have become dumbfounded. The Fokalore soldiers look at each other with bitter smiles.

“Is it inopportune for me to interrupt the words of Knight-sama?”

“Isn’t it fine as we were told to kill them anyway?”

“Let’s hurry up with getting rid of them and go to the next place.”

The remaining knights drew their swords due to the speech and conduct of the soldiers, which didn’t try to show a splinter of respect towards the knights and had absolutely no tension.

“You lowlifes are raising your hands against knights as inferior soldiers?”

Those were words intended to daunt them, but without even caring at all, the Fokalore soldiers started to let the weapons, they held, dance.

As result of the anticipatory training the Fokalore soldiers received in

buildings like the Lord's mansion, they are experienced in indoor combat as well. Enclosing the knights as group thrusting without swinging the sword as core of his attacks, a single soldier is dealing with the knights at front while the other soldiers slash away from left, right and the back.

In contrast, the knights originating from the Second Knight Order are basically in charge of fighting outdoors. As they were hitting pillars with their large sword swings, they couldn't move as they wanted.

In the end, all of the five knights didn't last more than a few minutes and were sliced apart like Kuai. (T/N: Kuai is a Chinese dish consisting of finely cut strips of raw fish or meat)

“Uh... how to say it, it's extremely gruesome... Are you fighting like this even in the territory of Fokalore?” (Adol)

Once the battle finished, the hidden prime minister quietly came out. Looking at the knights having been turned into miserable corpses, he feels slightly nauseated.

“Not so often after the war has ended. There's rarely anyone acting violently in Fokalore.”

“Thanks to that we will grow dull if we don't go on expeditions”, several of them say.

“So, about the talk from just now, it will be fine, if I guide you to the place of Knight Captain Lotomago, correct?” (Adol)

“Yes, please. With us not being well-accustomed to the interior of the castle...”

“Then let's hurry.” (Adol)

The Fokalore soldiers follow Adol, who has left the room at a quick pace, one after the other.

“All things considered,”

A single soldier muttered.

“I’m glad I wasn’t in the other group.”

Remembering their colleagues, who were assigned to another unit, all of them agreed.

“Good grief. Something like running in a narrow, dark places is ideal for scary midgets.”

Due to the laughter occurring in the rear, Adol was puzzled whether he should caution the soldier, but decided against it.

(He should also be in the core of the soldiers belonging to the national armed forces though.) (Adol) If he knew of the proverb ‘One rotten apple spoils the barrel’, even Adol might’ve agreed right away.



“Fuee... *sneezes.*”

A single Fokalore soldier was offered smiles of pity by his colleagues, as he had magnificently scattered his spit.

“Ugh, how filthy.”

“Bad, bad boy.”

“Be quiet. We are almost there.”

They, who merged into a three-man cell, are advancing through the hidden pathways within the castle.

Having received the order from Hifumi to split into groups, they are proceeding in a quick march according to the map, they had driven into their heads for a long time.

The area, they had been assigned to, is a section of the castle's third floor.

Not wearing any armour and with a sword affixed to their waists being the only metal in order to not make any sounds, no metallic parts are attached to them.

“Do we have the aforementioned ball?”

“I'm holding onto it.”

One of the soldiers held out a small ball in his right hand.

Within the dim pathway its red colour could be clearly seen. Being soft, the ball was crushed between the fingers holding it.

“Whoa, don't smash it here.”

“I know.”

“Shh! ... don't go beyond this point.”

As the three advanced silently along the path taking care to not make any sounds with their feet, two knights, holding lights, could be seen standing.

With them chatting while facing the other way, they haven't noticed the

Fokalore soldiers.

“... It doesn't seem like the lot of the Royal Knight Order is around here.”

“Looks like some people were killed, but apparently we have suffered some losses as well.”

“Damn it... is Balzephon's plan really going to work? If the losses become too large, it will be impossible to seize the castle.”

“The operation has already started. We have no choice but to follow through now.”

The Fokalore soldiers judged the two knights to belong to the rebelling forces by the contents of their conversation. Looking at each other's faces and nodding, the previously shown ball was tossed at the knights.

“Uwah!?”

With a splashing sound the ball hit the armour, burst open and scattered a red fluid.

“Ugh, blegh!?”

A smell similar to rotten eggs spread from the liquid. While being confused by the surprise, the knights spit out with sounds of vomiting.

The thrown ball was a plant's fruit that gives off a terrible stench once the ripe fruit is crushed. Apparently its taste is delicious, but due to the smell no one intends to eat it. It was famous because it was used by children to play pranks.

“For trashy knights, who turn their blades against the nation, a rotten fruit is only befitting.”

“Only stupid simpletons would fight from the front.”

As they thoroughly provoked them, the teary-eyed knights drew their swords and approached in pursuit.

“You blockheads, there’s no way your swords will hit anything.”

The soldiers from Fokalore matched their breathing and broke into a run.

The knights, who wore armour, are too slow. While skilfully adjusting the distance so that they think they can catch up though they won’t, the soldiers are running to their target location while pulling the enemies along.

“This is difficult.”

“Don’t die if you fall over.”

“It’s also no good to unexpectedly separate them. Where was the target location again?”

“Don’t forget that.”

They are running and running through the gloomy, hidden paths.

Even at other places, there were Fokalore soldiers luring knights in the same way. All of them are heading for the same location.

Towards the largest place in this building. Towards the dance hall.



“What happened to the group that went to get rid of the prime minister? There isn’t any contact from the guys, who were restraining Lotomago, either.” (Balzephon)

Due to Balzephon raising an angry voice, his knight colleagues look at each other’s face and nothing else.

“... They likely also had the tables turned on them? Why are you saying something like you being strong without any basis?” (Imeraria)

Balzephon turned a scornful glare at Imeraria talking calmly.

“There is no way for us, who have continued to fight, to lose to the lot of the incompetent Third Knight Order, who only move around in secret for things like intelligence!” (Balzephon)

“If you believe that, it’s fine if you go checking it with your own eyes. ... It will likely be unpleasant to realize who is the strongest person within this castle currently.” (Imeraria)

Imeraria declared that in a nonchalant air.

“... I guess that’s fine. I, who is the leading power of this battle, tell you, I will personally defeat those resisting crushingly!” (Balzephon)

Entrusting the guarding to the knight, who continues to hold his sword at Imeraria’s side, Balzephon draws his sword at his waist and takes the remaining knights along. The maids are sitting in a huddle next to Imeraria.

“Look forward to it. Once everything’s finished, I will have you stand in front of the people as queen in name only.” (Balzephon)

“Just wait for that obediently”, Balzephon left with these words.

Once the door closed, the knight, who remained to keep watch, stared at Imeraria and the three maids, who were sitting lined up side-by-side, again.

“Don’t get any strange ideas. If any problems occur, I plan to cut you down.”

In the instant he told his threat in a low voice, his neck was attacked by a sword sweeping sideways from his back.

Cutting as far as half through the neck, a hard sound rings as the cervical vertebrae is hit.

It was Midas, who stood in the back of the knight, who collapsed while scattering blood.

“I’m very sorry for getting here this late, Imeraria-sama.” (Midas)

Lowering his sword, Midas kneeled in front of Imeraria and apologised.

“Please raise your head, Knight Midas. I’m valuing your work very highly. ... Just where the heck did you appear from?” (Imeraria)

“Ha! As a matter of fact, receiving a request from Earl Tohno, I was observing the situation from a hidden passage. Because the number of enemies decreased, I used the opportunity.” (Midas)

It seems like he is feeling ashamed for him not coming out at the time when Imeraria was hit a dozen times. Imeraria, who realized that, laughed unintentionally.

“You endured it well. If you had rushed out at that moment, you would have likely been killed and the chance to rescue me wouldn’t have appeared. Once again, you have my thanks. At any rate, did Hifumi-sama foresee this state of affairs?” (Imeraria)

“It looks like he was aware of several people plotting a rebellion. Because I would probably have been killed if I had declined the invitation, he told me to take the opportunity to conceal myself as guard...” (Midas)

“Do you know what is currently happening?” (Imeraria)

Midas lowered his head and shook it in reply to Imeraria’s question.

“I’m sorry. I left the scene at an early stage.” (Midas)

Imeraria, who thought for a little while, made Midas stand up.

“We will stay in this room as is, Midas-san. If by some chance some knights of the rebelling forces came, they wouldn’t kill us quickly. Leaving that aside, please join up with Sabnak’s group.” (Imeraria)

Imeraria gets up.

“The coronation ceremony will be held. Please prepare for that.”
(Imeraria)

“Eh?” (Midas)

“The rebelling forces will be cleaned up by Hifumi-sama before long. It’s not a matter to worry about.” (Imeraria)

Midas had no choice but to abide to what Imeraria clearly declared.

“Good grief, if you at least helped me gallantly, it would raise my evaluation of you a little.” (Imeraria)

Although Midas also heard the words she muttered, he decided to forget them right away. It’s because it extremely unlikely for him to do something crude as sticking his nose into the affair of others.



“You bastards are...”

With only discovering several corpses of knights scattered in the offices and without finding the crucial masters of the rooms, Lotomago and Adol, Balzephon’s irritation only increased.

Before the eyes of Balzephon, who next headed towards Sabnak’s room while making stomping sounds with his feet, stood a small girl.

“The representative of the rebels?” (Alyssa)

Visiting with her head inclined to the side, it is Alyssa.

“You rude lass. If you don’t want to be slain, get out of the way... no.”
(Balzephon)

He brandished the sword with its blade blank.

“I will have you atone for the sin of having made fun of a knight.”
(Balzephon)

The sword, swung downward with all his strength, only hit the floor causing Balzephon stance to grandly fall apart.

Alyssa had averted its trajectory with the wakizashi she held in a backhand grip.

“That sword is...” (Balzephon)

It’s a sword with only a slight curve having a single edge. Its characteristic, as Balzephon had heard before, was similar to the sword with the name katana, which Hifumi possesses.

“Hifumi-san’s... I wonder if you don’t get it. It’s a verbal message from Earl Tohno.” (Alyssa)

Even though she was assaulted with a sword, Alyssa, who wasn’t perturbed in the least, retrieved a memo from her pocket with a rustling sound and read it out loud.

“The stupid knights are gathering in the dance hall. End.” (Alyssa)

It totally rubbed Balzephon the wrong way that she even went as far as especially taking out a memo just to say only this much.

“Don’t mess with me!” (Balzephon)

“Uh-oh.” (Alyssa)

Alyssa, who easily avoided again and again the fast-moving, swung sword, jumped around with nimble movement.

“Since olden days my speciality is to evade, you know. That’s because I have officially worked as ojii-chan’s guard.” (Alyssa) (T/N: ojii-chan = grandfather in a very familiar way to call him)

“Wait!” (Balzephon)

At the moment Balzephon called her to stop, Alyssa immediately jumped out of the window.

“... Fuck!” (Balzephon)

Balzephon wavered while wandering around aimlessly for a while, but he doesn’t see any figures except the corpses of his colleagues up until

here. Although there should at least be 40 of his colleagues remaining, he doesn't meet anybody.

Clicking his tongue, he advances towards the dancing hall located at the centre of the castle with heavy feet at a quick pace.

Soon he arrives in front of a large door leading into the dance hall.

Once he opened it with a violent kick, he saw Hifumi's figure there, surrounded by ten-odd corpses and furthermore encircled by knights beyond the circle of corpses turning their swords at him.

Due to the loud sound of the door opening, the gazes of everyone present gather on Balzephon.

“Ba-Balzephon! Do something about this man! He has already done in quite a few of us!”

Yelling while dripping in sweat, it was a knight, who had been earlier hit with the fruit and was lured up to the dance hall.

“Oh, at last the ringleader came?” (Hifumi)

The instant Hifumi said that, the door in the back of Balzephon, who entered the room, closed.

“Well then, aren't there still around 30 of you remaining? Use your head. Brace yourselves and properly look at your surroundings. Recall the things you have practised until now. With this it will be possible for you to finally fight me decently.” (Hifumi)

Due to Hifumi's laughter, Balzephon grasped his sword strongly and trembled with rage.

Even if he only looked roughly at it, almost all of the remaining knights of the rebelling side have been gathered here. To put it simply, every last of them has been lured here and in the end more than 10 have been killed in a short amount of time.

“Don’t screw with me!” (Balzephon)

Forgetting about himself being led here as well, he shouts.

“You idiots, all of you have been lured here abandoning your own stations! Furthermore, what’s this sorry state with only a single opponent! You should be ashamed!” (Balzephon)

There also were knights, who lowered their sight due to his words, but there are also those feeling antipathy.

“Balzephon! Haven’t you come here as well!?”

“Right! In the first place, it is likely your fault for the operation going badly!”

Due to the knights, who started to quarrel among themselves as if forgetting the situation, Hifumi made an astonished expression.

“Get along with each other. After all we will do our best to kill each other from now on.” (Hifumi)

Holding the katana above his head, Hifumi laughs.

“Well, then let’s start now, okay?” (Hifumi)

Balzephon readied his sword as well.

At any rate, if we kill the man in front of my eyes here, all will turn out well, opening his bloodshot eyes, he started to run.

Chapter 79: Kings and Queens

“What an idiot! Do you plan to win against this number of opponents?”
(Balzephon)

Although Balzephon started to dash towards Hifumi raising his voice to yelling, he lost sight of Hifumi in the blink of an eye as he was moving, as if gliding, in the dance hall crowded with the other knights while laughing.

“Tsk! Where did he go!?” (Balzephon)

He surveys his surroundings while turning in a circle, but he isn't able to spot Hifumi's figure.

“You can't say it's always advantageous to have large numbers.”
(Hifumi)

Striking the head of a single knight, he enters the blind spot of his opponent before he can turn around and strikes yet another knight.

“I guess it's inevitable for you to obstruct each other with such experiences?” (Hifumi)

“There you are!”

A knight, who was brandishing his sword, slashes at the back of the talking Hifumi.

“Don't speak. You have to do a surprise attack.” (Hifumi)

While saying these words, Hifumi lightly placed his hand on the shoulder of the knight, who was in front of him, and changed places with him in a swift movement.

“Gya!?”

“Uh...”

The knight, who planned to hit Hifumi instead ended up hitting his own colleague with his sword, was beheaded while being perplexed.

“You are far too close to each other. That results in you cutting your own allies, if you swing your swords poorly.” (Hifumi)

The knights, who personally witnessed the friendly fire, have an indecisive attitude even while preparing their swords.

Being in a separate location, Balzephon instructed all of them to disperse.

“Everybody, fall back to the walls of the hall!” (Balzephon)

Hearing his voice, the surprised knights are slowly withdrawing.

Hifumi, who was left all alone in the centre of the hall, sheaths his katana and laughs daringly.

“Is this the correct answer, I wonder? So, what will you do next?” (Hifumi)

“How arrogant... although the Second Knight Order was destroyed, you likely only attacked captain’s group from the back after they were exhausted from the battle. Us knights won’t fall behind a country-bumpkin like you bastard.” (Balzephon)

“Look at the reality.”

Hifumi shakes his head as if being incredulous about Balzephon’s words.

He knocks with a finger on the pommel of the katana at his waist.

“We have so many knights here, why won’t the fellow, who has already come out in front of me and told me to fight him one-on-one, come forward? It’s simple. You saw your colleagues getting killed. You are probably aware that you won’t be able to win.” (Balzephon)

The knocking sound of a nail hitting the metal fixtures of the pommel is resounding.

Balzephon glares at the knights in his surroundings, but all of them are trying to not make eye contact and avert their sight.

“You worthless bunch! Don’t you have pride as knights!?” (Balzephon)

“No, no, if you say this much, you have to take the lead and come forward yourself.” (Hifumi)

Saying this while laughing, Balzephon stared at Hifumi with a bright red face.

“Ah, if you are scared of this, let’s go bare-handed.” (Hifumi)

Once Hifumi drew the katana, together with the scabbard, from his waist and quickly tossed it into his darkness storage, he showed his palms.

“Hey, set up your sword properly. Since I’m not wearing any armour, you might kill me, if you hit me. If you hit me, that is.” (Hifumi)

“You underestimate a knight far too much, bastard. I will chop you into pieces and present your corpse in front of Imeraria.” (Balzephon)

Balzephon stepped forward correcting his sword stance.

While gradually shortening the distance to Hifumi, he dispatches the knights, who are in Hifumi's back, with a glance, that lasted only an instant.

Balzephon, confirming that both of them nodded, purposely spoke in a loud voice.

“Die!” (Balzephon)

“That's impossible in this situation.” (Hifumi)

Hifumi slowly advances diagonally forward.

With only that alone, to say nothing about Balzephon's sword, the two swords, swung downward from the back, don't hit either.

Hifumi, who circled into Balzephon's back as if smoothly passing through, kicked the backside of his opponent's knee with the tips of his toes and locked an arm around the neck of the kneeling Balzephon.

Constricting the neck together with Balzephon's right hand holding the sword, Balzephon's consciousness is slowly getting muddy.

“Hey, try having a look at your surroundings. There's no knight trying to approach in order to save you. What's a knight? Are they guys, who also abandon their friends to save their own lives? Are they running away from battles only caring about appearance and weapons?” (Hifumi)

Due to Hifumi's voice from right close-by, Balzephon's head has become a sloppy mess.

What is the pride of a knight I wanted to protect? What is that lot looking from a distance as I'm getting killed this very minute? Just what the hell did I want to become...?

“Your brain still works, I guess. What can you do to survive right now? Is it holding your head high and brandishing your sword? Is it being

proud of your noble birth?” (Hifumi)

Balzephon thought. He literally thought in desperation.

I ended up dropping the sword due to my arm losing strength because of the pressure of the constriction. It's also impossible to grip Hifumi's arm with my left hand. I can't move my feet well due the kneeling posture either.

At last his vision became a cloudy white.

“... This guy was also only at this level, huh?” (Hifumi)

With a disappointed voice of Hifumi audible, the strength of constriction is raised even further.

“Gugu...” (Balzephon)

“Oh?” (Hifumi)

Balzephon ducked his head with all his might and opened his mouth. Somehow managing to open his front teeth to the degree of 2 fingers wide, he bit into Hifumi's arm resolutely.

“Uh-oh.” (Hifumi)

On the verge of having meat torn off, Hifumi released the restraint and separated from Balzephon.

Balzephon, who got out of the predicament, gained distance from Hifumi by rolling on the ground without caring about his own appearance.

“*cough... cough*” (Balzephon)

“Your choice just now was good. There are people even saying that biting is vulgar and such, but it’s an effective attack. Teeth are strong.”
(Hifumi)

As Hifumi was talking calmly, Balzephon looked at him with eyes filled with tears while coughing and rubbed his neck staying silent.

“Now then, just now you literally bit yourself to survival, but... what’s your next move?” (Hifumi)

“... I was able to calm down due to being close to death. I won’t be able to become an ideal knight anymore. Therefore, there’s no meaning in putting up a front either.” (Balzephon)

While saying this, he removes his armour with clattering sounds and drops it on the floor.

“I have understood. I’m no match for you bastard.” (Balzephon)

Balzephon, whose figure became agile, muttered “Finally free.”

“Next time I will win.” (Balzephon)

Once he finished saying that, Balzephon turned his back on Hifumi and ran with all his power.

Without change he rushed out from the narrow exit for the servants, the knights and nobles usually didn’t use.

Hifumi didn’t chase after him.

“How nice. How far will he get? My anticipations increased by one more... well then.” (Hifumi)

Hifumi matches the sight of each of the knights, who saw off Balzephon suddenly escaping in blank surprise.

“Only one chose life rather than honour, but what will you guys do?”
(Hifumi)

“If it’s now, I will give you a big service. I will finish you all at once while unarmed”, he said.

The knights let their looks swim for a while. But if it’s such large number against an unarmed opponent, he apparently gradually became generous. One after the other set up their sword with a grim expression.

“That’s great.” (Hifumi)

Stepping forward with his right foot, Hifumi holds out both his hands in front and takes a relaxed stance.

“Let’s do this thoroughly until either of us dies.” (Hifumi)



Due to the instructions of Midas and Vaiya, who regained his consciousness, the soldiers are guiding the populace to the plaza in front of the royal castle.

“At last the coronation ceremony is starting”, several soldiers loudly exclaimed, cautioning the people to advance slowly without running.

“Midas-san, this side is finished.” (Vaiya)

Vaiya, who concluded the stationing of the soldiers, ran up to Midas and gave his report.

“Understood. Since I will be continuing with the assignments of the guards for the venue, get in touch with Captain Sabnak.” (Midas)

“Yes, sir.” (Vaiya)

While issuing instructions to the soldiers without break, Midas, who remained at the plaza, made sure that the populace gathered in front of the royal castle.

At the time many people entered the plaza and the noise settled down, Midas unintentionally looked upwards and saw Sabnak’s armoured figure appearing on the balcony. Imeraria slowly showed herself accompanied by Shibyura, taking the breath of the people.

“It’s the princess!”

As someone raised their voice, the people’s gazes instantly turned towards the balcony.

Even the soldiers, while paying attention to the surroundings, turned their looks upwards against their better judgement.

“Everybody living in Orsongrande, on this occasion I, Imeraria Torie Orsongrande, will succeed my father and rise to be the ruler of this country.” (Imeraria)

A great majority of the gathered populace expressed joyful looks and applause reverberated.

Seeing this, Imeraria smiles delightfully.



“Thank you very much.” (Imeraria)

Imeraria, who regained a serious expression right away, inhales a large breath.

“This country has been exposed to many crisis. Battles have occurred, a great number of soldiers and knights got injured and a not negligible number of them perished. There are also the great accomplishments of Earl Tohno. Although these resulted in victories, there were sacrifices as well. I won’t forget this fact.” (Imeraria)

Everyone listened carefully and silently to the speech of the new queen.

“For them, who risked their lives to protect this country, I have the obligation to create a good country, where everyone can live in abundance. If there was a result of having protected it, I believe it to be the mission to make such country. I’m well aware that I’m an unreliable,

young ruler with shallow experience. For this reason I will promise all of you. I won't become an egoistic tyrant." (Imeraria)

Imeraria, who declared that with a refreshed expression, slowly returns into the royal castle while receiving cheers and applause to the degree of feeling an earth tremor.

While men and women were exchanging their opinions about the just heard declaration, they returned to their daily lives in succession.

Midas, who followed up on the dissolution of the populace, noticed himself shedding tear before he knew.

"Pajou, it might be something different from what you had been aiming for, but Imeraria-sama, firmly standing on her own feet, announced her path. There might be many problems, however I believe it to be a plenty satisfactory outcome." (Midas)

Anxious about the fate of this country and the princess, he recalls his colleague, who lost her young life. Secretly splitting away from the mass, Midas spilled a stream of tears.



There were already less than 12, of the group surrounding Hifumi, remaining.

The group, who assaulted their unarmed opponent with swords, having their necks, arms and feet broken, were forced either to faint in agony, to toss themselves about in great pain or to die.

For those, whose limbs were still alright, the most they can do is to drag away their injured comrades to separate them from Hifumi.

Even as they slashed desperately, Hifumi directly steps into the bosom of the attacking knights, as if completely sticking to them like a magnet, and with his held-out fist, similar to two wedges, he hits their chins and

ribs.

Once they drop their swords due to the pain, their arms will be arrested and they will get thrown. Crashing into the solid ground with their heads first, their necks will be broken or, if they are lucky, they will faint due to the damage suffered by their heads.

Even if they tightly gripped their swords, their faces will be grabbed and the back of their heads will be thrust into the floor causing a flower of blood painting the floor. Or they will have the insides of their elbows beaten, which naturally causes them to injure their faces or feet with their own swords.

“Impossible... the opponent isn't even using a weapon.”

“Shit! Why doesn't he die!?”

Frightened people, angered people, Hifumi continues his attacks without discrimination.

On the contrary, to finish it up, using the force of the sword swung downwards by a knight, he arrested the knight's arm, quickly circled around, let the power flow downwards from above and crushed his face, nose first, into the ground making him faint.

One of them had their helmet seized and their cervical vertebrae broken by twisting.

One of them had their sword stolen and died by having it thrust into their own face.

One of them had the flesh of the throat torn off with fingers and bled to death.

There were still some alive moaning, but within the hall painted in red with blood, the last one, trying to run away, had his feet constricted and fell over. With him having his neck broken by being stepped on only Hifumi was remaining standing.

“Fuu...” (Hifumi)

As expected, it was a large number, Hifumi, who inhaled a breath due to overflowing with emotions as it had been a long time since he handled a large number of opponents bare-handed, exhaled in satisfaction.

Amply savouring the smell of blood, he goes around delivering the finishing blow carefreely.

There were also some begging for their lives, but with a single word of 「Too slow (T/N: osoi)」 he snatches their lives away by twisting their necks or stepping on them without using the katana at all until the very end.

Hifumi, who suddenly noticed a presence entering the dance hall he remembers, slowly turned his look towards the open door.

“... Although it was such amount of knights, did you spare that person...?” (Imeraria)

It's Imeraria who stood there.

“The most energetic guy was also the smartest and ran away. He is probably the mastermind.” (Hifumi)

“I dealt with the lot left behind, but there's still the possibility of something else lurking somewhere”, Hifumi laughs.

“Hifumi-sama, just now I finished the coronation ceremony.”
(Imeraria)

Rather than a crown, she was bestowed a diadem with detailed ornaments and gleaming in golden colour so that it was more suitable to call it a tiara. It was on top of Imeraria's soft, silver hair.

“I see.” (Hifumi)

With these short comment, Hifumi placed his heel at the neck of the last

fainted knight and put his weight onto it.

Hearing the thick groan, Imeraria averted her eyes.

“Watch it properly. This is the result of you not being able to firmly lead the knights.” (Hifumi)

Due to Hifumi’s words, Imeraria put her breathing in order and surveyed the inside of the hall.

“What on earth do I have to do so that it doesn’t end like this... ?”
(Imeraria)

“Don’t know. In my case, at the time I considered them to be suspicious, I would screw them up? ... No, this much had better be important for you. It’s convenient to reveal the idiots. In fact, this many idiots came gathering.” (Hifumi)

“Besides, there’s also a worth in doing it as there were so many opponents”, Hifumi says.

Did they guess the state of affairs? Groups of Fokalore soldiers entered and began to skilfully clean up the corpses.

“Well, this is your way of doing things. I have likely my own way of handling things. The desired outcome is probably different as well. Because you wanted to kill them, you did this. You likely have no choice to do it this way whether you like it or not.” (Imeraria)

Imeraria ponders.

“Think and think about it. You won’t get an answer until the results appear after trying. After all, if I look at the battle just now, I could have died. There’s nothing strange about that either. Considering the things you can do, deciding to do your best and using everything you can use, it’s fine to be sad or happy once the results come out.” (Hifumi)

Just before leaving the room, Hifumi looked back at Imeraria.

“Observe your surroundings. Though those, who are usable, might come gathering on their own accord, it’s a totally different story whether you will be able to understand the things you see and the seen things.”
(Hifumi)

Does he plan to sleep? Hifumi said 「Good Night」 and left.

“That’s right, isn’t it? The prime minister, Sabnak, Vaiya-san and Lotomago. I should request the support from Midas-san as well. Besides...” (Imeraria)

Imeraria remembered the faces of the people, who gave her many cheers and applauses not long ago.

Imeraria, who headed towards the audience hall at a quick pace, sat on the throne and summoned Lotomago. She ordered him the suitable measure of chasing the escaping Balzephon.

This was the first decree of Queen Imeraria.

Chapter 80: Paradise City

While publicly being peaceful and internally taking a massive toll, the coronation ceremony finished safely.

Imeraria will unify Orsongrande as new queen, Adol will continue to counsel the ruler as prime minister and Sabnak will be assigned as guard for the castle and Imeraria as Royal Knight Order Captain.

In the castle, where the shadow of the prince faction completely vanished, it was decided to appoint new personnel as civil officials and knights by gathering appointed nobles, who don't possess new territories, and the sons and daughters of nobles, who aren't estimated to inherit their households.

The aspect, which was different from how it was done up until now, was that all of the personnel would receive training in Fokalore.

“Then, please take care of them, Hifumi-sama.” (Imeraria)

Having finished their journey preparations, the newly recruited nobles were lining up in a row. In their presence Queen Imeraria bowed towards Hifumi very naturally.

The nobles were noisily clattering about like ripples on a water surface, but there will likely be no one looking down on Hifumi as rising noble with this, Imeraria thought. If someone, possessing unusual vanity, were to come forth to confront Hifumi, the personnel, we gathered at great pains, would be decreased again.

“Understood. Since I received it as job, they will get trained properly.”
(Hifumi)

Hifumi showed a firm nod.

There is an agreement that from now on several of each, civil officials and military officers, will be sent as exchange students as request from the royal capital to Fokalore every year. Of course, Hifumi will be paid proper rewards by the kingdom.

“I’m sorry, Captain Sabnak, but thank you in advance.” (Vaiya)

“Yea, please leave the house-sitting to me. It’s alright for you to slowly savour the life of a newly-wed.” (Sabnak)

Close-by, where Imeraria and Hifumi have been talking, Vaiya and Sabnak exchanged greetings of departure. He, together with several knights, will accompany Hifumi and the trainees as escort until Fokalore. Together with his fiancée, Phyrinion, they are scheduled to head towards the territory of Viscount Amazelo, which is Phyrinion’s family’s home.

“Once I finish my part, next it will be Captain Sabnak’s turn, right? Since the person, who will become your father-in-law, is nearby, will you return home for some greetings?” (Vaiya)

Watching Shibyura quietly drawing close from behind Sabnak, Vaiya smiles.

“Don’t make fun of me. ... I still haven’t officially talked with the prime minister.” (Sabnak)

Vaiya, who stared in surprise, raised his voice alternately looking at Sabnak and Shibyura.

“You surprised me there! Is there some kind of problem?” (Vaiya)

“That is...” (Sabnak)

“It’s only Sabnak-sama being a good-for-nothing. Please go meet your bride without worries as I will have taken him along for greetings, even if

I have to hit him, until Vaiya-sama returns.” (Shibyura)

Shibyura, seizing Sabnak’s arm with the slender fingers of her right hand, is clearly digging her nails into Sabnak’s upper arm.

“As this person saved me by literally risking her own life, I intend to talk it over carefully.” (Sabnak)

In contrast to Shibyura, who has a rough nasal breathing full of fighting spirit, Sabnak was crestfallen and had dropped his shoulders.

“That is a problem.”

Between the maids a rumour has taken shape, which states that as result of Shibyura defeating two knights during the coronation ceremony’s rebellion, she saved Sabnak.

Those two had a good relationship since the coronation ceremony, but in contrast to Shibyura, who treats others with sterny* stout-heartedness, Sabnak, who often listens to the opinions of others with a gentle personality, is apparently seen as being totally dominated. (T/N: * キビキビ or kibi kibi, I think this comes from kibishii which means strict/harsh/stern *etc.* This is a bit cutely way to express an adjective like fua fua which means fluffy. So I will add an -y at the adjective’s end to express it. ^^)

“At least go to do formal greetings once you get some confidence after having acquired slight achievements as captain.” (Vaiya)

Sabnak saw Vaiya off laughing feebly.



Different from before at the main gate of the capital, where it has turned into a cheerful departure, heavy air drifts about in the office of Knight Captain Lotomago.

Two people, Lotomago, who’s the owner of the room, and Adol are in

here.

“Then, there’s no doubt that you will retire after today?” (Adol)

“Yea, with the serious affairs, that happened in the castle, far from being helpful, I ended up being caught by the enemy. I have no position as military officer anymore. I have received permission by Her Majesty the Queen yesterday.” (Lotomago)

While sorting the documents remaining on the desk, Lotomago calmly answered the prime minister’s question.

“However, at that time even Her Majesty the Queen as well as the Royal Knight Order Captain suffered from enemy attacks. I think there’s no necessity for Lotomago-dono to retire or anything like that though...” (Adol)

Lotomago slowly shakes his head towards the prime minister, who tries to detain him. His face shows no grief or bitterness. He has a calm and gentle expression.

“Even though Captain Sabnak was saved by Earl Tohno and prime minister’s ojou-san, he personally acted towards escaping the danger. As for Her Majesty the Queen, she was betrayed by the guards attached to her. In comparison, I, who wasn’t able to offer any kind of resistance, couldn’t do anything more than passing the time by sitting and waiting...” (Lotomago)

Temporarily pausing his words there, Lotomago leaned his body against the back of the chair.

“No, that’s no more than mere pretence. A military officer, who wasn’t able to fight because of his old age, should leave. That’s all there is to it. There’s no meaning in lining up reasons, that seem like excuses, either.” (Lotomago)

“It seems that you’ve made your decision.” (Adol)

“It’s just a story about running away. It isn’t anything as noble as a decision. Besides, I discovered a successor, whom I was able to smoothly burden with the work.” (Lotomago)

Due to Lotomago smiling, even Adol was lured into laughing.

With a sudden knock on the door, a single knight came entering.

“Excuse me. I was told you called for me, but... this is, were you talking with His Excellency the Prime Minister? I’m very sorry.” (Midas)

It was Midas, who entered the room.

“No, it’s alright since I called you here.” (Lotomago)

Urged by Lotomago, Midas stands in front of Lotomago.

“Midas, how old were your children again?” (Lotomago)

“Ha? 10 and 7 years old, but... Did something happen?” (Midas)

Midas, who was confused being abruptly asked about his family, pulled himself together and replied honestly.

“I see, the prime time of being mischievous. Although you rejected it once, won’t you move to the mansion, which is close to the royal palace? For only 3 people the care-taking will be easy as well, if you employ a maid. Accordingly it will likely become more comfortable for your wife, too. Because it is easy to get lessons close to the royal palace, even for educating children, it will probably be convenient one way or the other.” (Lotomago)

“No, the size of that mansion is for us too spacious after all... I will feel awkward to receive food made by someone else since I like the home cooking of my wife.” (Midas)

He is a stubborn fellow, Lotomago smiles. Adol, who listened as well, showed a smile.

“However, if someone, who is the Knight Captain, commutes from too far away, it will likely take time to deal with it once something happens.” (Lotomago)

“? I’m the vice-captain. Because there’s also a place in the castle, which is on standby in case of an emergency...” (Midas)

“That’s what we will talk about now. You will become the captain. The notice of personnel change has already been accepted by Her Majesty the Queen as well.” (Lotomago)

Looking at the paper, handed over to him, Midas has been surprised as if his eyeballs are popping out.

“Th-This is... But, for me, who hails from a poor Viscount family, this sort of position is...” (Midas)

“Idiot!” (Lotomago)

Due to Midas being perplexed, Lotomago shouted in a thundering voice with a strict expression.

“Are you believing that you can save anyone by using your pedigree? Did that Earl Tohno obtained his victories by showing off his position as Earl? Is it only that much you, who watched him from close-by, gained from that person?” (Lotomago)

Due to Lotomago’s powerful tone, he usually doesn’t use, Midas was only surprised at the beginning, but at the time he properly grasped the things said, he was able to calm down and bow.

“I’m very sorry. I’m not very good at swordsmanship, but I have the experience of having seen many people by blending in amongst the populace. In that aspect alone I have confidence that I won’t fall behind or even lose to that Earl Tohno.” (Midas)

“Very well.” (Lotomago)

Lotomago returned his smile to the same one as before.

“Then, go back home holding that notice of personnel change at once and explain it in front of your family. Isn't it necessary to have a talk with your wife first, also to prepare the moving? I have already called for people to tidy and polish up the mansion. A maid for around 3 people has been arranged as well.” (Lotomago)

“... You have my deepest thanks for your considerations.” (Midas)

In the eyes of Midas, who bowed once again, a few tears shone.

“What? If I consider the size of the things that will weight on your shoulders from now, this is the least I can do at the end. ... I will vacate this place tomorrow. Also, I will rely on you.” (Lotomago)

“Ha! Please put your trust in me!” (Midas)



Eventually the disturbances, which caused many victims to appear, primarily thanks to Hifumi, came to a temporary end.

Orsongrande and Horant established a firm bond using the territorial administration skills and combat engineering of Fokalore as materials for bridge building.

On the contrary, Vichy received a strong protest regarding the manoeuvring within the castle by the envoy and his attendants from Orsongrande. In the end, the cessation of hostilities took a shape close to a total capitulation of Vichy's side.

Even concerning the independent Pyulsan, by using the method of forming a relationship of sending personnel for studying towards Fokalore, in order to successfully establish a pipe, which is stronger than

Vichy's, Vichy became unable to make a careless move on them. As a result Vichy recognized the independence due to them being an enemy they had no way to crush.

There were no countries, which perished, and the number of countries increased. Once they noticed, Orsongrande's realm had expanded and they became a power, whose right to speak couldn't be overlooked anymore as was custom in the past.

Although it was the common understanding of all nation that this was due to Hifumi backing them, Hifumi has a stance of not making any speeches or showing his face in the public field of diplomacy. Adhering to what they heard about his nonchalant attitude, the nations have become cautious in contacting him, which also includes Orsongrande, the nation he belongs to.

Instead, the appeal of his territory and not the person himself has increased.

Many people, who are engaged in territorial administration, guards, knights and people, leading territorial soldiers are coming to visit Fokalore. Because they stay with public funds and study there, the territory's population is following the path of increase and the amount of money spent in the territory rises as well.

There's also the influence of the war damages. Manpower from around the world comes gathering. Unnoticed, the population of the territory of Fokalore has become several times that when Hifumi was inaugurated as feudal lord first. Reaching the point that even cities like Arosel, being in the same territory, are gathering people, the developed cities, because of governors dispatched by Fokalore, rapidly put their appearance and institutions in order.

It might be only a natural outcome that the city turned into a festival merrymaking at the time the feudal lord came back to the city of Fokalore, which achieved a prosperity above the current capital.

“Let us through~ !!” (Alyssa)

Leading at the front, Alyssa shouts and the soldiers desperately pry open a path.

In the back of Hifumi, who is advancing on horse, there is Vaiya's group of knights and civil officials and continuing behind them the trainees, who were just freshly recruited.

The population unanimously clamoured and welcomed Hifumi, who was seen to advance while being accompanied by many people, home.

In order to reply to them, once Hifumi raised his left hand and lightly waved, high-pitched shouts of joy were raised.

“It's good that Origa-san isn't here.” (Alyssa)

The soldiers nodded due to Alyssa's murmur.

Hifumi and Vaiya head towards the lord's mansion as is and Alyssa guides the remaining people, who came to study, towards the lodgings, which are being rapidly erected in Fokalore.

“””””Welcome home, Lord-sama.”””””

At the moment they entered the mansion, the 5 civil official slaves greeted them with a bow.

Stepping forward, Caim stands in front of Hifumi.

“There haven't been any problem on the whole. Let me express our pleasure for you returning home safely.” (Caim)

Since he had a serious look that didn't shame his nickname of arrogance, Hifumi wasn't particularly happy either, but as it had been a while since he last heard his indifferent voice, he actually experienced a feeling of having come home.

As he casually looked around, he caught sight of Miyukare looking around restlessly without being able to calm down.

“What are you looking for, Miyukare?” (Hifumi)

“L-Lord-sama, hasn’t the Military Director travelled together with you?”
(Miyukare)

“... She is guiding the trainees from the capital towards the lodgings.”
(Hifumi)

“Thank you very much!” (Miyukare)

Bowing in a hurry, Miyukare darted away.

As he is astonished by this spectacle, Phyrinion comes down from the upper floor and bows towards Hifumi.

“I heard about your return. With this the burden on my shoulders will be lowered as well.” (Phyrinion)

With her seeming to have only a bit fatigue left, her eye colour can be seen to have become slightly cloudy, too.

“Thanks for your work. Since it’s alright now, it’s fine to take Vaiya along.” (Hifumi)

Phyrinion, who smiled sweetly due to Hifumi’s words, showed a beauty appropriate for her age.

“Thank you very much. ... Well, then let’s go.” (Phyrinion)

Having his arm seized by Phyrinion, Vaiya gave his greeting to Hifumi in a hurry and, taking Krinola along, the two of them headed towards Phyrinion’s lodging place.

“Then, we want the privilege of reporting concerning the events during your campaign.” (Caim)

“Before that I want you to listen for just a minute.” (Hifumi)

Holding back the civil official slaves around Caim, who started to take out documents each gathered as report, Hifumi turned towards Caim.

“For example, will there be any problem, if you guys nominate someone to whom I can entrust the territory for a while again?” (Hifumi)

Caim closed his eyes for merely a few seconds regarding that question and opened them then again.

“It’s probably difficult. Even without the the issues of ability, the territorial administration brings status with it. If it’s Lord-sama and his family, or possibly a noble dispatched by the capital, there won’t be a problem, but I don’t believe the system will function well, assuming some commoner or slave takes the post.” (Caim)

“I see. How troublesome.” (Hifumi)

It’s difficult to summon someone from the capital again. I don’t know what kind of person will come.

However, naturally I have no family in this world.

“Family... family, huh?” (Hifumi)

Grumbling up to here, the faces of his family in his former world didn’t appear in Hifumi’s mind.

And he didn’t feel anything about that not being the case either.

He also doesn’t think that there’s still some way to go before he wants to return to the world over there.

“That’s right. For example, there would likely be no problems to temporarily entrust it to your wife, if you were to get married.” (Caim)

“St...” (Doelgar)

Due to Caim’s suggestion, Doelgar tried to stop the flow of the conversation in a panic, but it was too late.

The topic of Hifumi’s marriage partner has flowed to the female staff member, who was pricking up her ears nearby and has been spread in a twinkling of an eye.

It didn’t even take 3 hours until the rumour ‘Hifumi is looking for a spouse’ spreads from the staff members to the soldiers and from the soldiers to Alyssa’s ears.

“This might turn into a disaster...” (Alyssa)

For Alyssa, if you ask her whether she sees the person called Hifumi as a man, she won’t be able to answer clearly.

I like him, but as result of having seen the fanatic called Origa from nearby, honestly speaking, it has cooled down in some respects. As for it becoming a competition, it will end by me being stabbed before it’s about whether I can win or not, Alyssa is assessing.

However, for a spouse looking at it as third party, he is a rising noble with popularity regardless of inside or outside the country. But, for Hifumi, who isn’t someone lining up huge achievements, it is easy to imagine that he will become the most popular partner, not just for nobles, but also for commoners, who will aim for the position of concubine.

“If Origa-san came back now, it would turn into a major disaster...”
(Alyssa)

I don’t believe that that Hifumi is actively looking for a marriage partner, but concerning Origa, even only the rumour will doubtlessly give her a plenty excessive stimulus.

Issuing instructions to restrain the diffusion of the rumour in a hurry, Alyssa ordered to pass a message to the gatekeeper to notify her first,

once Origa returned.

“Origa-san, I want to meet with you soon, but only for now, don’t come back, okay...?” (Alyssa)

With feelings similar to a prayer, Alyssa rushed towards the lord’s mansion.

Chapter 81: Marry You

Balzephon, who escaped the castle, rushed into the dormitory of the knight order, grabbed his spare sword and money, he had been safekeeping, from his own room and left towards outside the city.

Simply reporting 「It's an emergency mission」 to the gatekeeper, he borrowed a horse, which has been prepared for messengers, and galloped away on the highway.

The knight, chasing him, confirmed that fact from the guard. But he was in a situation, where he already didn't know how he should chase him, since it was more than 3 hours after the incident.

But Balzephon, being on the chased side, is rushing due to his dreadful feeling of Hifumiswooping down on him from behind while holding the blood-soaked katana any time now. He advanced on the highway with a speed, that was wasting his horse. He is heading towards Vichy. There is the necessity to pass through Fokalore, but once he enters Vichy and once he is within the cluster of city-states, which are engulfed in a maelstrom of chaos, it will likely be simple to hide as person of unknown affiliation.

Purchasing food in small cities and villages along the way, he obtained money and clothes by threatening a small number of travellers and merchants with killing them.

"I'm already in a state that makes me being called knight impossible."
(Balzephon)

At the time he killed and discarded a merchant, who resisted, Balzephon laughed with a sentiment of self-deprecation. Once he thinks about his own figure scavenging the pockets of the corpse, it turns into a miserable feeling to the degree that he wants to Cry, but above throwing everything away, he has made his decision to survive no matter what he has to do until he accomplishes his revenge.

While repeatedly sleeping outdoors or in deserted houses of small villages, he heads for Vichy economising to the best of his ability. *It's probably necessary to bribe the gatekeepers with money at the time of entering Vichy. Besides that, there's also the possibility of money*

becoming quite necessary. Currently isn't the time to talk about luxuries. On the contrary, really decent inns are strict on inspections.

If I consider that I might even inadvertently bump into noble acquaintance, it's absolutely no good to stay for a long period in hotels and large cities. I might encounter monsters, but I will try to proceed by travelling along the highway being only slightly away from it. He judged that he should also be cautious of patrolling soldiers.

However, thanks to that he ran into a troublesome opponent.

"... Who's there?" (Balzephon)

"That's my line. You have quite the wild appearance, but that sword is a wonderfully nice item. Where did you steal it from?" (Origa) It was Origa, leading several soldiers, who appeared in front of Balzephon in a place close to the forest, only visible as distant place from the highway.

"This sword is my own. Even if tell you that, it hasn't the shape of being worn-out considerably. You don't look like some kind of bandit, but..." (Balzephon) Putting his hand on the sword's hilt, Balzephon takes distance. Watching Origa's figure, which was clad in a robe, he considered the possibility of a magician. He feels uneasy about her not holding a wand, but Balzephon's judgement, sensing that she was someone with a dangerous aura, was accurate.

"You apparently still haven't seen anything... Since I will offer you to overlook us, get lost." (Origa) "Seen?" (Balzephon)

"It's something unrelated to you. If you obstruct the mission we received from hi... our boss, I won't be able to guarantee your life, okay?" (Origa) Balzephon felt a sense of discomfort during their talk. He saw that Origa has been constantly worrying about the area behind her.

"Mission, it is? Although you seem to be leading soldiers from somewhere, you yourself don't look like a soldier or knight." (Balzephon)

"It's pointless to pry too much. I have a premonition, that it's no good, if I don't hasten my return. If you don't disappear, I will go even as far as erasing you, but..." (Origa)

Suddenly a sound of grass being trampled down can be heard from behind Origa.

"Origa-sama, the monster is headed towards this place!"

Hearing a loud voice calling for her attention, Origa left the spot promptly.

As result it turned into a situation of the monster, which jumped out, to appear in front of Balzephon.

"Wh-What? This fellow is..." (Balzephon)

Howling with a volume to the level of causing the skin to prickle as if receiving an electric shock, it was a monster similar to a tiger baring its sharp fangs, but its length was two sizes bigger than that of a normal monster. You can see sharp claws on its thick forepaw. Even if only touched lightly, skin and flesh would be totally torn off. The soldier, who held some tool and was likely chased by the monster, came out of the forest, where the monster jumped out from. If you look closely, the monster's back has been stabbed by two things similar to short spears.

"I'm sorry, Origa-sama. It suddenly woke up and the restraints weren't in time."

"There's no problem. Because it seems to have grasped its fodder, we can leave it as is." (Origa)

Balzephon, realizing that he was designated as the fodder, Origa was talking about, quickly drew his sword and fixed his stance.

As the monster raises a growl, he is unable to let his view wander.

"This is likely your prey. Take responsibility and dispose of it."
(Balzephon)

"Prey? Well, I don't mind if you think of it like that. Please do your best to gain time so that we can get away. Well then." (Origa)

"Since it will be a bother, if you come chasing", Origa threw a shuriken.

"Uh?" (Balzephon)

Balzephon, who received a wound on his knee, barely avoided falling down.

"Then, goodbye." (Origa)

Origa, leaving while taking the soldiers along, vanished towards the forest and not the highway.

For the sake of pursuit, he stepped forward bearing the pain, but once the monster realized that its prey was impaired, it struck with its forepaw.

He managed to just ward it off by using his sword, however his feet had no strength and moreover his bleeding increased.

"Fuuuuuuuuuck!" (Balzephon)

The scream resounded in the forest, but his voice didn't reach anyone.

"If it's too peaceful, it will be troublesome, too. For a shinigami, that is."
(Shinigami)

"Be quiet. I can't concentrate." (Adol)

Prime Minister Adol, who ignores the death god's words by telling it to be quiet, moves to the next shelf without stopping his hands.

Ever since the coronation ceremony ended, Adol continued with his search of magic documents about return spells secluding himself in the reference room.

Although the war ended for now, the result was the biggest problem, 'Hifumi', not only did he finish it unhurt, but his territory was continuing to grow to the degree that you could even compare its power with a whole country.

If I consider the situation from here on, even with the matter of sending personnel to Fokalore for the sake of strengthening our war potential for starters, the number of knights in the order has already decreased. Concerning the work of the civil officials, whose stagnation is apparent because many nobles were disposed of, I can't even oppose against receiving training to make them more efficient.

Rather, since the contents themselves are above the evaluated standard of Adol himself, you can instead call it a furtherance school.

However, while that may be true, I don't want to believe that it is fine for Hifumi's existence to be in this world indefinitely.

"He is a man that creates enemies if there aren't any. Anyway, have no doubt that he will become a harm for this country and Her Majesty the Queen." (Adol)

Adol, believing in that, worked hard at Collecting documents about lost magic in order to prepare countermeasures after that.

"A bit longer, though it would be great, if someone stirred him up." (Shinigami) "

There should have already been more than enough casualties. If such

war happens often, this world will perish." (Adol)

He scans the thin lithographs, which were arbitrarily and carelessly piled up, picking up one after the other carefully, so as not to break them, from the top.

"Oh my! In the World, he came from, many thousands and who-knows-how-many ten thousands people have also died." (Shinigami)

"... How can society be sustained with that?" (Adol)

Adol, who unintentionally stopped his hands, looked at the floating shinigami, which only had its head.

Previously it was only a face, but now it has completely restored its head.

"The population's origins are varying a lot. There are also several billion people. It even isn't unusual for people to survive up to 100 years in age." (Shinigami)

"Billions... I can't even imagine. Wellfine, I'm doing my best to return him to this wonderful world or whatever. Shut up a bit." (Adol)

"Understood." (Shinigami)

Adol heaved a single sigh towards the shinigami, who disappeared as if smoke was dispersing, and continued his work.

Finishing to check all of the piled up lithographs, he is dejected as he didn't find the thing he's aiming for.

"... Oh?" (Adol)

In the interior, where the lithographs were drawn from, there's something, that leaned against the wall and was inconspicuously wrapped up in a cloth. Once he took it into his hands, even that was once again a lithograph for record keeping.

Someone likely put it there in order to hide it, but probably ended up neglecting it. The cloth crumbles as he is tearing it off.

"This is...(Adol)

It's different from Return magic, but maybe I can use this, Adol took off his outer garment, carefully covered the lithograph with it and left the reference room.

The next day after Hifumi's return, Phyrinion, who was prepared to head towards her family's home, for some reason came to the conference room of the civil official slaves after being summoned by Hifumi.

"Excuse me." (Phyrinion)

When she entered the room after knocking, Hifumi and Alyssa were in front of her. She can also see the figure of Vaiya and in addition the 5 civil official slaves.

"It seems that I came last. I'm sorry for making you wait." (Phyrinion)

While apologizing, she sits down next to Vaiya with a natural flow. Although someone let a laugh slip out, she doesn't care.

"All of those called have gathered." (Hifumi)

Once Hifumi begins to speak, all looks concentrate on him.

"First of all, Vaiya and Phyrinion will leave soon." (Hifumi)

"Yes. After dropping by in Phyrinion's territory, we plan to return to the capital. We plan to depart tomorrow." (Vaiya)

"I see. Well, then I will give this to Phyrinion." (Hifumi)

Caim, receiving a letter from Hifumi, hands it over to Phyrinion.

Once she opened the letter, a dispatch in Imeraria's handwriting was written there. As the condition was the permission from Hifumi, Phyrinion was appointed as civil official of the royal castle and it stated that she would inaugurate in a role of coaching.

At the level of human resources you can call it an exceptional promotion, but Phyrinion was baffled.

"Umm... I will marry very soon though..." (Phyrinion)

Looking to her side, Vaiya is smiling for some reason.

"I know that, but what does that have to do with anything?" (Hifumi)

"Eh?" (Phyrinion)

"It's not particularly saying that you have to go to the castle at once, right? There likely won't be any complaints even if you take up your post after marrying." (Hifumi)

"H-However, for a wife, whose position is to protect the family, to work means..." (Phyrinion)

"I might give birth to a child", after saying this, Phyrinion covered her blushing face.

"Caim, is it not allowed for a married woman to work according to Orsongrande's laws?" (Hifumi)

"There isn't such a law. Even in cities, the madams are working full of spirit." (Caim)

"You see", Hifumi faced Phyrinion.

"I guess it's fine if you work in the castle together with Vaiya. Leaving that aside, please spread the literary and military arts, you have studied in Fokalore, over there as well. I plan to tell this to Horant as well, but I want you to reply to them if asked." (Hifumi)

"Haa." (Phyrinion)

Is it fine with that? Phyrinion thought, but since she realized during her stay in the mansion of this territory's feudal lord that it was wrong to wish for something ordinary, she doesn't say anything.

"Phyrinion, let's still work in the castle together for a while. It's too early for you to step down from active duty. It's a precious opportunity to be helpful for Her Majesty the Queen." (Vaiya)

"Oh well... understood. Let's accept this deal." (Phyrinion)

Some people applauded to Phyrinion, who stood up and bowed.

"And have to give you the severance payment and salary for your work in Fokalore until now." (Hifumi)

Doelgar, receiving Hifumi's instruction, placed a cloth bag filled with gold coins in front of Phyrinion and Vaiya. It has been filled with an amount that will even trouble a grown man to lift.

Once Phyrinion timidly opened it, all of it was filled with gold coins, without silver or copper coins being in sight.

"This much!?! isn't that enough to buy quite the mansion?" (Phyrinion)

Inside the bag there are 1000 gold coins. Since a capital's soldier's monthly salary is 1 gold coin and a knight's monthly salary is around 5-20 gold coins, Phyrinion was uneasy about the amount of money.

"It also serves as wedding gift. You did your best to increase the population and enrich the territory." (Hifumi)

"T-Thank you very much." (Phyrinion)

Together with Phyrinion, Vaiya also stood up in a hurry and bowed towards Hifumi.

However, the civil official slaves around Caim are aware of it, for the Current public funds of the Fokalore territory paying this kind of amount is no trouble at all.

Because the business with Phyrinion and Vaiya came to a close, the two of them left.

What remained are only the true core members of Fokalore's administration.

"Well, let's get to the real issue at hand." (Hifumi)

"First is this", Hifumi handed the civil officials a new document.

"This is..." (Caim)

Caim received it, but was unusually lost for words. Looking at the documents, which were passed on by him, the expressions of the civil officials changed to surprise one after the other.

"Acknowledgement of Release? We won't be slaves anymore?" (Paryu)

Hifumi nodded to the question of the youngest, Paryu.

"The territory is stable as well. You were already able to amass more money than paid for you. Besides, due to the things I will do from now on, it's essential for you to decide whether you want to follow me with your own resolve. It was written by Imeraria." (Hifumi)

Due to Hifumi's treatment of the other side, who just became queen, hasn't changed, there are some thinking "As expected." and some "Is something Wrong?"

"Since I have decided to always follow Hifumi-san, I want everyone to decide what they want to do in the future." (Alyssa) "I will remain." (Miyukare)

It was a prompt decision by Miyukare after hearing Alyssa's words.

"Calm down, moron." (Hifumi)

As Hifumi said so, he entrusted his back to the chair and continued with "First listen to my story."

"To begin with, since you will be given an amount of money as severance payment even if you leave this place, it's fine to do business or whatever. I won't forbid you to speak about the details of my speech from here on just because you got to know them. It's alright even if you want to speak about it." (Hifumi)

"I will deal with you if you become an enemy", once he said that, it became a natural occurrence for everyone choosing to remain silent.

"After this will go play with the lot of the beastman race. I also plan to go have a look at the Country of Knights, which is beyond." (Hifumi)

Everyone came to the matching opinion "It likely won't finish with you going to have a look", but of course no one says anything.

"During that time I want you to continue strengthening this territory. If it goes as have planned, the fight with the beastman bunch will begin first. Depending on the situation, it might also become a fight with the Country of Knights. At that time there's also the possibility that Vichy will once again become our enemy. It's depending on Imeraria, but it's not said that it's impossible for Orsongr ande's royal army to become hostile as well." (Hifumi)

In other words, except Horant, which wants to focus on the reorganization of the nation, all their surroundings might turn into enemies. That's his announcement.

Everyone except Alyssa and Caim, have fed up faces due to Hifumi brimming with the intention to cause turmoil again.

"I will remain on this post after all. The possibility of a war happening is the same anywhere. I might as well stay safe close to the strongest person. Besides, I don't have any intention to separate from the Military Director." (Miyukare)

Miyukare declared and threw even a wink towards Alyssa.

"I will stay as well. I ain't feeling like doing another job at this point. I finally arrived at a point where the commerce and industry relations are on track too. I also believe there's no such enjoyable work like this." (Doelgar)

"I shall remain, too. Until now we weren't even treated as slaves. I also fell in love with this city." (Brokkira)

Next Doelgar and Brokkira chose to stay. Paryu pondered for a while, but seeing the others of the female camp choosing to stay, she apparently resolved herself.

"Please let me work just as before as well. I don't think I would be good at anything else, even if I went to another place. I want to work here together with everyone." (Paryu)

And at last the looks gathered on Caim, who maintained his silence so far.

"As a matter of fact, there have been inquiries by several noble households for me." (Caim)

"I see. Well, I guess so." (Paryu)

Paryu likely wanted Caim to stay behind as well. She's looking at him with eyes full of anxiety.

Caim's excellence has spread, regardless whether in-or outside the territory by everybody coming and going. If he hadn't the social standing of a slave, there would have probably been even more scouts concentrating on him.

The several letters, he took out from his pocket, are likely invitation letters. Caim ripped those apart and threw them away without hesitation.

"I have always pondered about Lord-sama's talk regarding growth and destruction. The thing called synergy of promoting the level and scale of wars as well as people becoming wealthy." (Caim)

Facing Hifumi, he bowed.

"After all, Lord-sama is probably a hero (eiyuu) summoned to this world. I wanted to see the advanced world even if smeared with blood. I believe if it is to be a wonderful world, there will surely be difficulties ahead. If one doesn't get hold of it after going through hardships, that won't be anything more but an illusion either. Please, let me serve you from here on, too." (Caim)

"Understood. I will leave it to you from now on as well." (Hifumi)

"Then, please choose a governor before you leave the territory once again. It doesn't even matter, if it's only as decoration, now." (Caim)

"Ah, that, huh?" (Hifumi)

Alyssa's shoulders trembled due to a topic appearing, she was afraid of.

"I will marry someone and leave it to my wife. You guys were also nagging me about an heir for a long time now." (Hifumi)

"For a noble it is an important duty to continue the family line."

"Saying something like that, is there anyone who wants to marry me?"
(Hifumi)

Due to the words he said lightly, everyone, who was in this place, except Caim, shouted 「Please wait until Origa returns」.

Chapter 82: Marry Her

The gossip, that Hifumi is apparently looking for a marriage partner, spread within Orsongrande and was even circulated in Horant and Vichy, despite Alyssa's and the civil official slave's eager efforts.

The rumours, recounted by soldiers moving within the country and merchants going around the streets, has even reached Imeraria's ears before long.

“... Someone will marry that Hifumi-sama?” (Imeraria)

“It's a mere rumour, but since he has excellent civil officials at his side, I can't deny the possibility of them proposing it for the sake of preserving the Earl Tohno household.” (Adol)

Although she agreed with Adol's remark, she isn't able to imagine some woman standing next to Hifumi and even less exchanging the vows of marriage with him.

Looking at Imeraria, who ended up silent while knitting her brows, Adol displayed a state of panic.

“N-No way, Your Excellency the Queen, about Earl Tohno...” (Adol)

“Huh?” (Imeraria)

Only after she started talking about it, the image of herself standing next to Hifumi appeared in front of her eyes.

Imeraria shook her head vigorously in denial.

“What are you saying? As queen I believe to know the requirements of

the person I choose. Also, isn't Hifumi-sama my enemy?" (Imeraria)

Adol can't conceal his concerns in regards to Imeraria, who is blushing albeit denying it.

"R-Rather than such talk, I think we are to speak about the national politics now." (Imeraria)

"Yes. However, regarding the policies introduced by the territory of that Earl Tohno, if you consider the scale of the capital and its surrounding areas for adopting the tax system, it will become something very troublesome. We probably should start with the staff getting used to it by experimentally introducing it in a distant province. However..." (Adol)

Flipping through the documents nearby, he hands over a piece of paper, that was inserted in-between, to Imeraria.

"This is a copy of the "family register" which had been transcribed from the territory of Fokalore." (Adol)

"It's amazing. They have investigated as far as birthplace*, their hometown*, relatives, who don't live with them, the family members and their address?" (Imeraria) (T/N: Okay, this one needs a bit explaining: 出生地 = shusshouchi 出身地 = shusschinchii. Both might mean birthplace but there are differences, which depend on the conditions. shusshouchi is the legally written-down birthplace in the family register. shusschinchii can either be the place you were born, the place you were born and grew up and the place you grew up. If you are born and grow up in the same place, shusschinchii = shusshouchi.)

"As you can see by the attached materials, they have investigated things like the work details and recorded them." (Adol)

While staring intently at the documents, she examines the record contents of one, she likely selected at random, as example.

"The reformation of the tax system also profits from this sort of accumulated information about the residents. That's how it is. On grounds of these information, they have apparently been managing things

such as marriages, births and deaths.” (Adol)

“Currently Fokalore has become the area with a more accurate budget compilation and population transition than anywhere else in the world. These data of the residents is even useful for stuff like the tracking and prevention of crimes and the prevention of slums being created by mediating work and confirming the enrolment,” Adol continues.

Listening to his explanation this far, Imeraria dropped her shoulders while putting back the documents.

“In a political meaning, you are saying that Hifumi-sama has gained plenty of heroic achievements. If only father and me didn’t make a mistake in the way of meeting with him, it might have been possible to make adequate use of Hifumi-sama’s power for the sake of the country.” (Imeraria)

Loneliness overshadows the expression of Imeraria.

Certainly, since our first meeting, there were only problems. In my imagination I yearned for a maiden-like bright love by meeting with a powerful, great brave-sama*, who is over overflowing with justice. (T/N: eiyuu = hero, yuusha = brave. My choice is like that because yuusha is the kind of hero to go with a party in a dungeon or challenge a demon lord, while eiyuu is someone admired for their deeds and achievements for the people by the people. Either can be the other as well, thus it’s just my personal distinction here.) I don’t want to think I made a mistake, but didn’t I end up becoming a queen by some mistake? Isn’t this a dream? Even now she believes that.

“Overcoming the difficulties, Your Majesty has splendidly protected Orsongrande. There have been various dangers and many precious things were lost as well, however as result the country continues to exist, the realm has expanded and even now its growth is continuing.” (Adol)

Adol’s words are no lie.

Encouraging her by using facts, made Imeraria happy.

“Thank you. Well, then let’s pull ourselves together and proceed with the talks. Let’s decide on a place, where we will introduce the family

register as trial for making a draft.” (Imeraria)

I will give it my all once again, Imeraria thought. Someday there will even come a day, where I can laugh at it while saying 「It was really difficult at that time」.



Being riddled with wounds all over, Balzephon sank in a pool of blood.

At the time he barely regained his consciousness, he wondered whether his body, which was hurting everywhere, was in pieces, however his body, which is reflected in his faint, returned field of vision, is somehow in perfect, good health.

“Survived... huh?” (Balzephon) (T/N: Cockroaches are hard to kill after all.)

The blood, spread in the surroundings, is a mix of the monster’s and Balzephon’s. As the bleeding of the monster, which has died with its huge frame having toppled sideways, has already stopped, Balzephon tried to crawl out of the sticky puddle, but his body isn’t moving properly.

“That woman... that weapon was the same thing called shuriken or something, which Vaiya gave the Royal Knight Order.” (Balzephon)

Somehow he shifts his neck. Once he surveys his surroundings, he saw a thin metal stuck in the roots of a tree.

“Tsk... in the end she is someone affiliated with that man called Hifumi or something, huh? Don’t haunt me wherever I go.” (Balzephon)

Fighting the deliriousness, he is remembering up to the point of being smashed by the swung forepaw and having somehow stabbed his sword in the throat of the monster.

Using up all his strength before being crushed underfoot the monster,

he probably just managed to survive. The sword in front of him, being stuck in the monster as is, has been stained red by being drenched in blood.

“... Eh?” (Balzephon)

In the chest of the fallen monster he discovered an unnatural bulge right next to the place the sword was stuck.

Once he casually touched it with his hand, he knew that something hard was buried underneath the fur. As he was checking it by feeling around, he also found traces of stitched together sewing.

Mustering his remaining strength, he draws the sword, cuts the seams and thrusts his hand into the opened hole.

“What’s this?” (Balzephon)

The dragged-out item was clearly man-made.

Tubes are growing out of it and continue into the body’s interior. It appears to be parasitic.

“It’s that woman’s doing, eh? Probably...” (Balzephon)

He believed it was a tiger possessing a large build he hadn’t seen until now, but once he looked a bit closer, he found that it was similar to a monster with a bit shorter fangs. Although it was a tiger he encountered during the training of the knight order, it was a lot smaller and weaker at that time.

If the same tiger was under the effect of enhancement with the magic tool then, would it have been a ferocious monster possessing this large build?

And what would happen if it was used on humans as well?

“... As it is, even if I collapse here, I will simply die, huh?” (Balzephon)

Turning over so that he faces upwards, he raises his eyes towards the dull and cloudy sky.

Rather than dying here, shouldn't I achieve my revenge even if I have to become a monster?

“I lost my knighthood and in the end I might even cease to be a human. That isn't even a funny story.” (Balzephon)

Encouraging himself with his monologue, Balzephon, sitting up his body by straining himself with the last ounce of energy he possessed, began to carefully extract each pipe connected to the monster.



Origa, who left behind the forest where they abandoned Balzephon, came in contact with the rumour related to Hifumi's marriage in a small town, where they stopped for resupplying.

“Would you tell me more details about this story?” (Origa)

The eyes of Origa, who passed a silver coin in a polite tone, are filled with strength and have become far too bloodshot. The green pupils, looking from underneath the hood, which she wore low over her eyes, can be seen as somehow shining in a dim light.

The shop's old man, having the silver coin pressed into his palm with a strength that its shape embedded itself there, begged with nothing but teary eyes,

“P-Please stop. I also only heard it from a peddler at the time of stocking up.”

“Where did that peddler go then?” (Origa)

He had a feeling that the peddler, who told him about it, would go through a bitter experience, but the old man easily spit out the regularly used inn of the peddler.

“I thank you for the information.” (Origa)

I ended up selling my colleague for a silver coin, the old man was grieving after being released. Origa rushed to the inn at a quick pace.

From the story, spit out by the peddler after passing some money, Origa became aware of the facts that Hifumi had returned to Fokalore and started the territorial administration in full scale.

Somehow or other it's a talk about whether he won't marry someone in order to continue the territory on that occasion, but it seems to be spreading as rumour from nowhere else but Fokalore.

“Hifumi-sama is...” (Origa)

She tells the soldiers, who are following her, to check the remaining amount of magic tools.

As a result of continuing to implant them into powerful prime fields* all throughout the area from Horant to Orsongrande with a zealous effort, Origa's group managed to quickly lower the amount of over 100 magic tools, they had at the beginning, down to 5 remaining. (T/N: prime field is a math term. I think the author means here that they took the basic monster/animal types (no mutations or cross-breeds) and implanted the magic tools into those. Why it's better to do this way though, no idea)

“... Even during our return to Fokalore, this remaining number can be easily dealt with...” (Origa)

Giving a prediction, which has a feeling of being strongly influenced by her desire, Origa decided to head towards Fokalore after staying one

night in the inn she had rushed into. The soldiers were also happy that they would be able to return at long last.

“It will be a forced march until Fokalore. As we will advance close to the highway putting the core of our attention on our speed, take care to sleep restfully tonight.” (Origa)

“Roger.”

The peddler, aware of Origa’s group staying in the same inn, paid the inn’s fee in a hurry and left in order to escape towards his next destination.

The Fokalore special unit, Origa’s group, pays no heed to such matters, rises early next morning and leaves the city behind alongside the rising sun.

While passing through several cities, they select monsters, which have a high fighting strength as their bases are bears and alligators, restrain them by weakening them with magic and weapons, embed the magic tool and release them. They perform this work many times over.

After all the magic tools have been used up, they run along the highway at full speed using a platform wagon.

“Very soon I will meet with Hifumi...” (Origa)

In Origa’s mind somewhat beautified memories of Hifumi were swirling about.

While the concealment caused some troubles, she is conceited about properly finishing her assigned mission. She also expects to be praised most likely. However, beyond that, at the thought of appealing for more, she has no confidence that she will be able to voice it out.

For a moment she considers to be rejected, even so it’s also a fact that Origa is the woman closest to Hifumi. She doesn’t plan to yield this spot to anyone else.

“Hifumi-sama, Origa will very soon return to your side. I continued to act separately from you for a long, long time. Therefore...” (Origa)

The words scattered into the wind were packed with desires leading somewhere beyond.



Although she is holding an exaggerated title called Military Director, Alyssa has been generally active at the actual site while leaving the majority of paperwork to Miyukare.

Her figure of training the soldiers and rewarding them for actively taking part while performing some tasks, without becoming a soldier herself, was received well even by the the fief’s population noticing that.

While shaking her red, short hair lightly, the small-built Alyssa is walking on the shopping street, eating a fruit similar to an apple and tasting the slightly sweet, freshly baked bread from a bakery. She produces a gentle and heart-warming mood wherever she goes.

While chewing on the fruit she arrived at last at the entrance of the city.

It’s a rule for those entering and leaving the city to be inspected by soldiers. Although it is an established custom to exempt nobles and wealthy merchants from another fief, Fokalore doesn’t permit that at all.

It is necessary to line up in order upon arrival without social status playing any role. It has been thoroughly followed according to the rules of the manual, but if you compare it with other cities, the soldiers’ treatment of remarkable commoners is soft. It was very popular with merchants, that are coming and going.

The soldier, spotting Alyssa’s figure, salutes delightfully.

“Director, thanks for your work!”

“Thank you. What’s your impression?” (Alyssa)

“Today the number of people trying to enter the city is small. It seems like the immigration drive is gradually calming down as well.”

Wanting to confirm the names and social positions of those having entered the city this time, Alyssa takes the documents, which recorded their objectives, and flipped through the pages.

There are many soldiers, who can't write characters, but the literacy rate of Fokalore's soldiers is 100%. In the first place, they won't be allowed to enter the army unless they are able to read and write characters. This was also something decided by Hifumi.

Honestly, at the time she arrived at Fokalore, Alyssa was in a state of being able to read but her writing was quite disastrous. But thanks to Miyukare teaching her with constant attendance, she reached the point of being able to write quite the beautiful characters.

Finishing the check smoothly and signing it to show that, Alyssa returned the documents.

“If there is a problem, report it at once to the Lord's mansion...”
(Alyssa)

Past the soldier, opposite her, Alyssa saw something approaching at an abnormal speed on the highway stretching into the far distance.

“Something's coming! Since it might be a monster, everyone get ready for battle! Someone go calling Hifumi-san!” (Alyssa)

“Ha!”

The soldier, who dashed away after receiving the order, conveyed the instructions to everyone at the gate and they lined up facing towards the highway. A single, young soldier hurried towards the Lord's mansion.

Alyssa, standing in front of those soldiers, draws her short sword.

“... Eh? That’s a platform wagon, right?” (Alyssa)

Alyssa, who has the best eyesight in this place, noticed the something, approaching while raising a cloud of dust, to be a well-known vehicle.

I wonder who’s on it, sheathing her short sword, she strained her eyes and saw light blue hair fluttering in the wind, of which she had some recollection.

Tension travelled through Alyssa’s back with a shiver. Turning around in a hurry, she yells at the soldiers at this place,

“Contact Hifumi-san right away to wait in the Lord’s mansion for further messages! If they encounter each other in this place, it will turn into a disaster!” (Alyssa)

Due to Alyssa’s face’s colour changing, the soldiers began to run with a speed never seen before.

Meanwhile the platform wagon ridden by Origa arrived in front of the gate and stopped with a loud sound.

“Long time no see, Alyssa.” (Origa)

“Welcome home, Origa-san.” (Alyssa)

“Well then, I want you to let me through now.” (Origa)

Alyssa jumped and clung to the waist of Origa, who got off the platform wagon and tried to go ahead at a quick pace.

“W-Wait a moment!” (Alyssa)

“Get away. From now on I will have a match* betting my life.” (Origa)
(T/N: shoubu... some of you might understand it better if I said, shoubu pantsu 😊)

“Before you have that match, I think there’s something you have to do!”
(Alyssa)

Origa, who was dragging along Alyssa as she walked, stopped her feet at those words.

“Something to do? Certainly you don’t want to tell me to have a match competing over Hifumi-sama, do you?” (Origa)

Alyssa doesn’t falter even as she is glared at by Origa, who is grasping the closed iron-ribbed fan tightly. The truly angry Origa is known for letting violence, instead of words, speak.

“No, no, it’s something else! Before you go to Hifumi-san’s place, isn’t it necessary to prepare for the sake of your battle? The current Origa has her hair unkempt and ruffled and her face covered in dust. Even your clothes...” (Alyssa)

Did she remember it only after being told so? Origa, looking down on her robe covered in dirt, vigorously apologized noticing her own mistake.

“E-Excuse me! Thank you for telling me!” (Origa)

“It’s fine. I’m a woman as well. It’s not like I don’t understand Origa-san’s feelings either.” (Alyssa)

Somehow I earned time for Hifumi to return to the Lord’s mansion, Alyssa clenched her fist imposingly within her mind.

“If I successfully become Hifumi-sama’s bride, I will recommend your case to Hifumi as well. Well then, before appearing in front of Hifumi, I will go back to my room.” (Origa)

“Yea. Don’t be in a hurry and take it easy. Hifumi-san should be in his own office.” (Alyssa)

“Many thanks”, Origa went away in good humour.

The soldiers, who returned together with Origa and were left behind afterwards, are sitting down in some place right after entering into the city feeling worn-out.

“U~~mm... Anyway, good work. Since you will have holidays for a while, rest up slowly, okay?” (Alyssa)

“T-Thank you very much.”

The soldiers, who felt like having been rescued from something, shed tears and line up words of gratitude towards Alyssa.

Maintaining the public order is difficult, Alyssa breathed a huge sigh.

Chapter 83: Yellow

“Hifumi-sama.” (Origa)

Entering Hifumi’s office, after knocking, was Origa, who cleaned off the dust of the journey in a hot bath and had neatly combed her hair.

Not wearing the usual blue robe, her outfit compromised of a shirt, with a flower embroidery, and a long skirt she had secretly bought at one time and put aside.

“Mm, Origa?” (Hifumi)

Hifumi, who was writing something down, raised his face and looked at Origa.

Seeing Origa’s face strained with nervousness, he recalls that was the same face at the time I coached her in the usage of shuriken some time ago.

“I guess there’s some talking to do, but please sit down and wait. I will be done very soon.” (Hifumi)

“Understood.” (Origa)

Origa sits down on the sofa, which had been placed in the office for receptions.

She was able to calm down a slight bit with the feeling of softly, comfortably sinking into it and the texture of the glossy leather, which immediately gave it away as high-class item.

In the silent office only the sound of the quill scratching across the paper can be heard.

Origa continued to watch the face of Hifumi, who keeps writing with a diligent expression, without getting tired of it.

She remembers, it hasn't been that long since that day, he came running through.

Which reminds me, it was also myself, who taught the way of writing the characters to Hifumi, she yearned for that time.

It was a poor hand-writing as if he can't read at all in those days, but as he put the petitioned documents of Caim's group in order, albeit reluctantly, it reached the point that he boasted about being able to write beautifully, she remembered and spilled a smile.

“Hifumi-sama, I will brew black tea.” (Origa)

“Yea, please do so.” (Hifumi)

Since Hifumi's favourite baked sweet were in the small, installed kitchen, she quietly placed those next to the tea on the desk of Hifumi.

“Oh, come to think of it, there was some pastry, wasn't there? Thank you.” (Hifumi)

Turning his sight towards Origa while seated, he smiles gently.

Origa, smiling back, likewise renewed her conviction of him having “this soft-hearted nature.”



While it may be true that he likes to kill people, the kind smile he shows towards me isn't a lie either.

I can't help it but blush if I now recall the time, he met me as slave, and me approaching him with nothing more but the calculative thoughts what many possible things would please him.

My mind, filled with the thought of vengeance, didn't notice it as I was desperate to get stronger by using him, but he was always smiling close-by.

I was given the irreplaceable time to accomplish my revenge properly by my own strength without relying on anyone.

The memories swirl alongside passionate feelings within Origa's chest.

“I kept you waiting.” (Hifumi)

When Hifumi sat down in front of her, Origa naturally floated a smile.

“What did you write?” (Origa)

“Ah, to meet the beastman race, I will go to the wastelands for a while. Therefore I wrote down the matters Caim’s group has to do during that time.” (Hifumi)

“Look here,” he presented her the paper. It was filled out with countless instructions concerning the administration and development of the territory in an itemized form with characters, that gave a somehow angular impression.

“For now it’s a listing. It’s fine for everyone to ponder about the minor details by themselves. After all, I planned to go on a trip...” (Hifumi)

While looking at the list, Origa cries.

She heard from the civil official, Paryu, during the time of arranging her own appearance about Hifumi heading for the area of the beastman race and even the area beyond, Swordland (T/N: swodorante <<), which is called the Knight Country.

Once she heard it from the person himself, she clearly understood from the mood that she isn’t included in the group, going on that journey, once again.

While hiding the thoughts that are tightening her chest, Origa endures to smile.

“Hifumi-sama, with your power you will reach the beastmen and even the vast plains on the other side.” (Origa)

“You are exaggerating. Looking at the situation there for a bit, I will only rampage, if I feel like it.” (Hifumi)

Origa stood up and poured new black tea into the cup of Hifumi, whose cheeks are swelling from tossing the baked sweets, he brought over from the desk, into his mouth.

Hesitating only slightly, Origa opened her mouth.

“Umm... isn't it possible to take me along on the journey to the wastelands?” (Origa)

Hearing Origa's words, Hifumi opened his eyes widely.

“It's a journey crossing through wastelands. There are no villages or cities, you know?” (Hifumi)

“I don't mind. As long as I can go together with Hifumi-sama, anywhere is fine.” (Origa)

Hifumi pondered while rubbing his chin.

“How problematic. I planned to leave this territory to you, Origa. There are other things I wanted to request of you as well...” (Hifumi)

“Request?” (Origa)

Hifumi beckoned her over next to him, brought his mouth close to her ear and told her so that no one would hear it.

At the time his face came close, Origa was frantic to calm her throbbing heart, but hearing the details, she even forgot her nervousness and was surprised to the degree of jumping up.

“Such a thing! In that case Hifumi-sama is...” (Origa)

“Don't you think it's fun though?” (Hifumi)

Looking at Hifumi laughing as if completely enjoying it, Origa thinks, I'm no match for this person after all.

“Please stay together with me at that time, too. If you are able to promise that, I will stay behind in Fokalore as you’ve told me, Hifumi-sama.” (Origa)

“Is that so? Thank you.” (Hifumi)

“However.” (Origa)

Origa grabbed Hifumi’s left arm as if clinging to it.

“It will be impossible for me to bear the loneliness during the time Hifumi-sama isn’t here. Therefore, please build a relationship with me this time...” (Origa)

Listening to the entreaty of Origa, who’s showing tears, Hifumi makes a troubled face.

“... If I consider it calmly, I’m happy that you are yearning for a guy like me. But don’t you think that your taste in men is slightly bad? A guy like me, who won’t stop killing people, can be killed some day by someone. This might happen 10 years from now on or it might also happen tomorrow.” (Hifumi)

“I might die leaving you behind in a blink of an eye and I might not return from the wastelands”, Hifumi continued.

“I will simply accompany you at that time as well.” (Origa)

Origa declared looking Hifumi directly in the eyes.

“I give up”, Hifumi raised both his hands and then embraced Origa’s shoulders.

“Origa, I will leave the territory to you while I’m not here.” (Hifumi)

“That is...” (Origa)

“Yea, I want to leave the future to you as my wife, but is that no good?”
(Hifumi)

“I have no reason to disagree!” (Origa)

Origa clung to Hifumi’s neck and raised her voice in sobbing.

Although she is overflowing with feelings of happiness, her tears don’t stop for some reason.

Origa, who cried like a child for a while, drew close with her body as if making sure and gave him a kiss, she had only experienced in her dreams so far.



“Marriage, eeh? That person is...” (Sabnak)

Looking at the written details within the regular report of the knights, who are observing all places for the sake of investigations, stating about the marriage to be grandly held in the territory of Fokalore, Sabnak looked up at the ceiling.

“Though I don’t know the person called Origa-sama, is she someone close to Earl Tohno?” (Shibyura)

Shibyura, letting her look glide over the documents placed on the desk, poured new black tea into the cup placed in front of Sabnak.

“Close? Well, I guess so. As it’s fine to say that that person has no relatives in this world, you might as well think of her as the woman, who has been at his side for the longest time. She is a lovely woman with her

forte being magic.” (Sabnak)

If you look at the parts concerning Hifumi, Sabnak added within his mind.

“Then it means that she was placed in a spot she should fit.” (Shibyura)

“Well, that might also be true. Even so, I can’t really imagine that person accepting a wife. Did he finally felt like settling down, I wonder?” (Sabnak)

Standing up, Sabnak collected the documents and grabbed them.

“Are you going out?” (Shibyura)

“Yea, if I don’t report to Imeraria-sama...” (Sabnak)

“It will be great if Imeraria-sama isn’t disheartened, but...” (Shibyura)

Sabnak was puzzled over Shibyura’s muttered concerns.

“I think it’s a reason for congratulations, though? With this it will be possible to judge it as Hifumi-sama planning to take root in this country.” (Sabnak)

“You are a dense person to a frightening degree. And that in spite of observing Imeraria-sama from close-by.” (Shibyura)

That’s why he doesn’t notice her feelings until the woman is hurt.

“Don’t bring up that matter again. But you can teach your dense fiancé the answer.” (Sabnak)

“Imeraria-sama is longing for Earl Tohno although probably unaware of it.” (Shibyura)

“Haa?” (Sabnak)

“Please hurry up and stop showing such stupid face as person, who is the Knight Captain”, Shibyura continued her explanation.

“Please try to think about it. That lady’s opinion is being twisted by her yearning as well as her desire for revenge against Earl Tohno. The stability of this country and the matter of bringing safety to Imeraria-sama’s surroundings by disposing of those, who caused the rebellion, is entirely owed to the strength of Earl Tohno in regards to the results. For Imeraria-sama, who’s always pondering about those matters, his figure is probably reflected in her eyes as hero and at the same time as enemy as well.” (Shibyura)

I have a feeling that more than half of that is her desire or rather a delusion, Sabnak judged, but didn’t voice it out.

During the short while they have been spending time together, he remembered that if he says something unnecessary to her, it will be returned ten-fold.

“A-Anyway, I have decided to carefully report it to Imeraria-sama. Thank you.” (Sabnak)

Sabnak, who left the room as if running away, ended up thinking “Could it really be?” and tried to lower his view at the time of reporting to Imeraria afterwards. He was restraining himself so that he wasn’t struck by Shibyura’s influence too much.

With nothing but ordering to send congratulatory gifts after receiving the report, Imeraria didn’t mention it in particular otherwise.



After Hifumi’s marriage, there were congratulatory gifts delivered not only from Imeraria but also from the nation’s nobles such as Biron and others. Moreover, even Horant’s king, Suprangel, presented several magic

tools through Nelgal, who is studying in the territory of Fokalore.

The festival merrymaking continued to spread throughout Fokalore for a few days and for a while the townspeople repeatedly spread rumours, where one didn't know whether truth or falsehood was mixed in, about the beauty of Origa, who became the Lord's wife, her greatness as a magician and her talents in battle being no less than Hifumi's.

Without losing time, Origa enjoyed the blessings of a newly-married life and went around inspecting and revising each of the territory's departments one after the other. She earnestly invested great effort in order to understand the type of person Hifumi was looking for.

At the beginning she received the treatment of a commoner, who attained the rank of a noble, poking her head into politics as if it was a play. There were even some staff members, who rejected her. But with her attitude of trying to correctly comprehend the matters of each department, they accepted her gradually.

Alyssa as well as the civil officials, starting with Caim, made time for things like explaining the plans and the supporting documents to such Origa. Under the leadership of Caim the work structures were rapidly arranged with Origa at the centre by adjusting the facilities of the Lord's mansion.

Before it was noticed, it advanced to the point of switching over the system to Origa so that a day came, where Hifumi didn't need to touch any document. Taking advantage of that, Hifumi hastened his preparations as well. In a blink of an eye Hifumi's travel preparations were finished.

Origa, of course Alyssa as well as the civil officials and a crowd of staff members and soldiers gathered around Hifumi, who was at the exit of Fokalore riding a horse, to see him off.

Outside there are also citizens, who gathered after getting wind of it.

“Since I will properly take care of the place for you to return to, Hifumi-sama, please enjoy your journey with a peace of mind.” (Origa)

Origa is shedding tears while saying that.

I don't know how long we might be separated from now on.

But, I won't stop you anymore.

As she has been entrusted something by Hifumi, she judges that she will be able to endure it.

“Yea, at the time of my return the city will probably be a lot bigger than now. The territorial soldiers and weapons will have likely become stronger as well. I’m looking forward to see that.” (Hifumi)

“Yes. Please leave the future matters to us and your wife.” (Caim)

Matching with Caim, the other civil officials bowed.

“I will properly take care of the military matters too!” (Alyssa)

Hifumi roughly stroke the hair of Alyssa, who exclaimed that with tears in her eyes.

“Yea, please make sure to defend the city even if the beastmen come attacking.” (Hifumi)

“It’s time to depart”, as Hifumi said that, the staff members bowed and the soldiers saluted.

“Hifumi-sama, please stay safe...” (Origa)

“It will be alright. I still want to enjoy situations of fighting and killing each other in this world for more time to come.” (Hifumi)

It’s a speech where one will doubt whether it’s fine to feel relieved, but as far as Origa was concerned, she apparently heard a good thing.

With a gentle smile she saw her husband off as he advanced on horse.

The man, who went around killing and arbitrarily involved three kingdoms in his whims, departed towards the wastelands by himself.

“Since they are called beastman, I will likely be able to fight in a way that’s no different from a wild style.” (Hifumi)

“What a pleasure”, getting excited in good humour, Hifumi gallops through the fields on his horse under the yellow-shining sun.

Arc 11: Let's go to the Wastelands and Play with the Fluffy Ones

Chapter 84: Road Trippin'

It has become common knowledge within Orsongrande that black pupils and black hair are Hifumi's characteristics. On the streets it's popular to dye the hair black.

At the same time, there is gossip, mixed with lies and truths, between nobles that he is an opponent they must never oppose (causing a Man'nen era)* (T/N: This sentence is a bit complicated for me to interpret. 万延 means Man'en era, which lasted from March 1860 through February 1861 and marks the destruction caused by a fire at Edo Castle and the assassination of Ii Naosuke. Thus it could be a historical reference. Likewise it could be the individual kanji with 万 being 10.000 and 延 being stretching/prolong, which would result in the sentence having a wording like "... there are 10.000 rumours stretching from lies to truths....") Thanks to that, without him being stopped by anyone at all the cities he passed and having only the best inns being prepared for him at his destinations, he was seen off, at the time he left, by the feudal lords and people in charge no matter how early it was in the morning.

Seeing these scenes, his fame among the populace was increasing with 「Earl Tohno is a hero recognised by everybody after all」.

In any case, without having to do any work, he could toss things like food into his darkness storage in large quantities enabling him to reach the last stop of the highway.

There is a fortress at the end of the highway facing towards the wastelands, where the soldiers are watching whether the beastmen are coming to attack. Although they gave Hifumi warnings to stop just in case, they didn't attempt to unreasonably hinder him any further than that.

“No trouble is always better.” (Hifumi)

They weren't interested in his rank overly much, but this was also very welcome and comfortable to him.

He galloped through the wastelands in high spirits.

The sun light in the wastelands is piercing. Though the air is dry it's much hotter than being in a city? I'm not sweating that much though.

For a while he continued in the open area, where only pebbles were scattered around, but after taking a break on the second day to sleep outdoors for a bit, he caught sight of something like a simple forest and a big boulder.

Once he got there, he sporadically noticed small animals and monsters.

Advancing while slaying the monsters, swooping down on him, in his spare time, he felt an observing gaze at the place he passed through at noon.

“Well then, I wonder what kind of fellow I will get to see first?” (Hifumi)

Opening his right hand as if he wants to draw his katana right away, he stuffs his cheeks with the sandwiches specially made by Origa using his left hand.

Since she gave him a large amount just before he departed and given that there are still plenty remaining, he throws them one after the other into his mouth without care and drinks water from the flask.

Is it bothered by the crumbs falling on its mane? As the horse shakes its head, he brushes off the crumbs while laughing with a 「Sorry, sorry」.

While advancing care-freely in that manner, there are presences at both sides, left and right, on his right hand side. Those slowly shortened the distance by weaving between the many trees close-by.

There's around 10 meter distance to the forest, where many trees are densely lined up.

Hifumi, who filled his stomach, got off the horse while being excited.

Adjusting the position of his katana at his waist, he faces towards the direction of the presences lazily and walks there slowly.

“I expressly came to this place. Let’s have some fun.” (Hifumi)

Hifumi softly muttered under his breath and silently laughed.



Although they are called wastelands, it’s not like the whole area has desolated, parched earth. There are also forest granting blessings at the level that each of the countless tribes can make a living by building settlements. Likewise there are branches of several large rivers.

Tribes like those of the tiger and lion clans often clash in skirmishes with their fellow warlike tribes, which have high individual fighting strength. Those, who can fight more or less like the dog and the bird clans, are living while defending themselves in order to not get swallowed up by these battles.

And there are also tribes, which don’t possess any special fighting strength while being in the wastelands.

Their representatives are the rabbit and sheep clans.

They live in the same group while being of different species. While travelling in order to hide from aggressive clans, they lived by obtaining the blessings of the forest.

“Nee, nee, Helen. There’s a human being. I wonder, will it be alright... ?”

The little girl, possessing dark horns, which were completely wrapped up in white, fluffy hair, talked anxiously to the little girl with rabbit ears, who is watching the situation next to her similarly hidden.

Ahead of her view she saw Hifumi walking towards the forest on the opposite side of them.

“Why are you worrying about a human? Won’t he kill us as well, if he discovers us?” (Helen)

Although she turns her reddish-brown, almond-shaped eyes and blames her, the sheep girl with her drooping eyes went “But, but” with a half-hearted expression and appeared to not take her eyes off Hifumi.

“Haa... anyway, let’s observe the situation. If there’s a corpse remaining, we might be even able to get something.”

“Don’t say such scary things...”

While they are talking, the human, visible at a distance, heads into the woods without hesitation.

“What a fool. Something like approaching the woods defencelessly. It will end with him being attacked by the monsters or the tiger clan nearby.”

“I’m somewhat scared...” (Reni)

“It’s because Reni is a coward. ... They came!” (Helen)

Due to Helen’s ears, she heard small footsteps, she had heard many times before, apart from Hifumi’s footsteps.

They survived so far because they escaped at full speed once they heard those.

“That guy is already done for. It’s the footsteps of the tiger clan.”
(Helen)

“Such a...” (Reni)

“Listen, be quiet. If we are found by the tiger clan as well, it won’t finish with us only getting killed.” (Helen)

Reprimanded by Helen, Reni, who held her tongue with a gulp, follows Hifumi with her eyes even while being frightened.

“If they leave the luggage and horse, it will be a great haul.” (Helen)

Even Helen, who murmured that in a small voice, motionlessly watched Hifumi’s movements.



In an instant Hifumi’s sight spotted the small reptiles, who passed under his feet.

The shadow, which jumped out of the thicket, headed towards Hifumi and came lunging in order to prey upon him.

In an instant judging that the attack’s not the degree of him having to draw his katana, Hifumi dodged the extended claw aiming at his neck, caught the wrist and used the momentum to let the attacker fall towards the ground on its back.

The enemy, on the verge of being slammed into the ground, escaped from the restraint by twisting its wrist and while quickly dodging, it stopped after having taken some distance.

“... A tiger beastman, huh?” (Hifumi)

The male tiger beastman, who wore simple clothes apparently made out of skin of other animals, grew fur, which has a characteristic pattern, on its entire body. He glared at Hifumi in absolute mortification.

“What’s up? Are you finished?” (Hifumi)

“Fuck! I thought it would be easy prey, but it became troublesome!”

Wielding his arms, possessing sharp claws left and right, he persistently aims at Hifumi’s face and throat, but none of his attacks even graze its target.

“Won’t the lot in the back assist you?” (Hifumi)

“What was that!?”

The moment he stopped his arms, the tiger is sent flying with a single kick into its belly and Hifumi told the presences, he felt in the forest, to come out.

Once he looked at the mutual presences, man and woman, apparently the same as the tiger male, came out.

“... Never did I expect to get sensed by a human.”

A woman type with a long, slender and well-proportioned body walked out silently and looked at Hifumi with her arms folded. Keeping plenty of distance and making sure to not have a tree in the back, she takes care to be able to escape at once.

In contrast, the male type was obviously irritated. Baring his fangs, he shouted at the fallen beastman.

“Oy, Gafan! What are you rolling around in front of a human. Get up and kill him!”

“I-I know!” (Gafan)

“Humph.”

Hifumi smoothly drew his katana and held it loosely.

“Are you going to help him?” (Hifumi)

“Don’t look down on me! I dun’ need any help for a single human!”
(Gafan)

Standing up, he once again brandishes his claws. Although he has raised the speed a little bit, it’s not enough to surpass Hifumi’s vision.

Avoiding them with agility, the man called Gafan got impatient and raising a roar, he came grabbing.

“What for?” (Hifumi)

While complaining, he passes under the left armpit while striking at the torso in a flash.

Gafan, who was split in top and bottom, died while looking as if he couldn’t believe it.

“Why is the second way of attack a grab? I was certain he would bite since you have your fangs. Lead your enemy around by making use of your footwork.” (Hifumi)

“Ga-Gafan is...”

“Tsk!”

The two tiger beastmen, who saw Gafan’s death right before their eyes, prepared by extending their sharp claws while feeling shaken.

“Oh, you feel up to it?” (Hifumi)

“Yea, I will kill you!”

It's the male type, who came running earlier.

No sooner than him coming in front of Hifumi, the entire upper half of his body shakes and his right hand come striking.

It was a force that would shave off the flesh, if it hit, but Hifumi, stepping into his bosom by speeding up even more, lets him go past while quickly rotating.

“Eh... ? This!”

Due to Hifumi, who approached her from the front as is, the beastwoman swung down the claws of both her hands in a panic.

At the time she was convinced of having caused many injuries in a vertical line on his face due to the perfect timing, both her arms slipped off.

“Aaaaaaaah!”

The beastwoman, rolling around in pain and scattering blood, had her life ended by her neck being sliced.

“It's not always true that they will come thrusting at the same speed.”
(Hifumi)

Hifumi, suddenly decelerating, only cut the downward-swung arms, but none of them was able to see through that.

“You bastard...!”

The ignored beastman trembles in anger and drips blood from his tightly grasped fists.

“Do you guys have a village or town as well? Or are you living independently with a small number of people?” (Hifumi)

Due to Hifumi raising questions nonchalantly, the beastman, who believed to be made fun of, leaped without answering.

Hifumi lost interest in the way of him brandishing the right arm just as the ones before and muttering that he cut off the beastman’s right arm sending it flying.

“Gaaaah!”

Although not falling to the ground, the beastman, who pinned down the stump of his right arm, fell to his knee’s and breathed heavily.

Hifumi’s eyes, looking down on him, showed the colour of disinterest.

“P-Please wait! With your ability, you should be a good match for our boss! As I will help you...”

Without being able to finish his words, his head dropped to the ground while still flapping its mouth and with a slight delay his body collapsed as well raising a cloud of dust.

“Boss, huh?” (Hifumi)

Deciding to move in order to meet that person soon, Hifumi’s look faced in the direction of the presences watching him from the thicket on the opposite side.



“A-Amazing...” (Reni)

The sheep beastwoman, Reni, frankly admired Hifumi’s strength, but Helen, being next to her, was drenched in sweat while her rabbit ears quivered.

“This may be dangerous! Reni, let’s escape quickly!” (Helen)

“Eh?” (Reni)

“Hurry!” (Helen)

As she got up leading Reni by the hand, the human has begun to move towards their location before she became aware of it.

While suppressing the urge to act rashly, she strongly grabbed Reni’s hand while persuading herself to stay calm.

She takes care to not make any noise with her feet as much as possible.

She watches to not advance in a straight line.

She makes sure to hide their figures in the shadows of the grove of trees.

“Haa... Haa...” (Reni)

She runs while eagerly remembering the methods of movement, she learned until now.

Although she knows that Reni’s breath is going wildly, she must escape even if she has to drag her along. The tiger beastmen were killed so easily. There’s no way we can match up to him.

Diving under branches hindering their way, she firmly treads through

the grass and jumps over stream-lets.

“He-Helen...” (Reni)

“What?” (Helen)

“T-That...” (Reni)

After looking in the direction, Reni was pointing at, while breathing heavily, she saw the figure of a person fiercely chasing after them.

“What! A human is catching up with us!” (Helen)

Even if it's impossible to fight for her, she had confidence in her ability to run on foot, but even that confidence crumbled apart.

“... Huh?”

While circling around between the many trees, she lost sight of Hifumi's figure.

“D-Did we get away... ?”

“At such time you have to earn more distance.” (Hifumi)

Hearing the voice of Hifumi, who descended in front of them from atop a tree, Helen, whose tension reached a peak, collapsed as if a thread was cut.

“Fainted, eh? Yes?” (Hifumi)

I believe there's no particular need to be afraid of me though, in front of Hifumi, who was thinking about that, Reni blocked his way.

“P-Please don't raise your hand against Helen!” (Reni)

Spilling tears and with her body shivering, Reni's eyes are firmly staring at Hifumi.

Hifumi, sighing a “Good grief”, stroke Reni's soft hair.

“I didn't particularly chase you to fight against you. If you aren't hostile towards me, I won't kill you.” (Hifumi)

“But, you killed the tiger people...” (Reni)

“Ah, that's because they started a fight with me.” (Hifumi)

“It's my own technique I thought up in order to defend myself as weak human”, Hifumi brags.

With his air not being the same cold air like a sharp blade as until now, the sight of him happily talking overlapped with her elder brothers.

“Really... is that so?” (Reni)

“You don't have to believe me. However, I only want you to tell me a little something. Leaving that aside, isn't it better to do something about that person first?” (Hifumi)

Looking the way Hifumi was pointing at, Helen's lower body part was wet and the smell of ammonia was drifting about.

“He-Helen!” (Reni)

She tries to carry the fainted body, but she's helpless due to her powerlessness.

Having said that, if she went away leaving Helen as is, she might end up getting killed by monsters or other beastmen.

“It appears to be difficult. If you like, I can help you?” (Hifumi)

Reni, who displayed a delightful face upon his proposal, changed her mind once she saw Hifumi's face.

“But, bringing a human along...” (Reni)

“If that's case, it will be fine not going all the way. If we get close, you will probably be able to call for someone. In exchange, I will have you teach me various things about these wastelands.” (Hifumi)

Reni looked at both, Helen and Hifumi, but apparently she couldn't come up with another good option. Spilling tears, she bowed towards Hifumi.

“Don't be so afraid. It's not like I want to eat you. On the contrary, here!” (Hifumi)

Hifumi passed her baked sweets, he took out from his storage, with a toss and vanished from her sight in the blink of an eye after telling her to wait so that he could get the horse.

Reni, who stared at the baked sweets, nibbled only a mouthful unable to resist the sweet fragrance. Making sounds of crunching, an involuntary smile leaks out due to the deliciousness spreading within her mouth causing her face to slacken.

“It was great. Although a human, he seems to be a good person.” (Reni)

Thanking her good fortune, she wrapped the remaining sweets in a cloth for Helen and stuffed them into her pocket.

Chapter 85: Eye Of The Tiger

With a posture of being placed upside-down on the horse's back, Helen dimly came to her senses while being carried with a slow swaying.

Watching the ground pass by in front of her with her rabbit ears shaking with a *piko piko*, she is waking up gradually.

“E... Eh?” (Helen)

Was it because I was the whole time in the same position? Her stomach hurts from being hit by the saddle.

As she raised her head and looked aside, she saw a human male and Reni walking side-by-side on the other side of the horse neighing with a *bururu*. She fell off the horse being taken aback.

“Re-Reni!?” (Helen)

“Ah! You woke up, Helen!” (Reni)

Being embraced by Reni, who came rushing over with a bright smile, Helen glared at Hifumi.

“Where are you planning to take us!?” (Helen)

“Don't know. I'm only following that person.” (Hifumi)

Looking at Hifumi, who answered readily and pointed at Reni, Helen turned her head towards Reni.

“Hifumi-san’s story is true. He accepted transporting the fainted you, Helen.” (Reni)

“Hifumi?” (Helen)

“It’s my name. Putting that aside, you can go back home now that you recovered your consciousness. Well then, with this it’s the end.” (Hifumi)

“Yes. Thank you very much until here.” (Reni)

Reni bowed very deeply. Helen, not understanding the circumstances, was at least cautious in regards to Hifumi.

“I heard plenty of stories on the way here”, Hifumi handed over several baked sweets to Reni and jumped on the horse.

“Ah, while we are at it, please tell me two more things.” (Hifumi)

“What are they?” (Reni)

“Do you know the location of the village of the tiger fellows, who attacked me some time ago?” (Hifumi)

Reni and Helen looked at each other due to Hifumi’s question.

“H-Hey, you! Don’t get too cocky over winning against two or three. Although it’s called village, aren’t there several tens of tiger beastmen over there as well? Although you are already strange with just crossing through the wastelands by yourself, do you plan to go to your death!?” (Helen)

Hifumi is nonchalantly listening to Helen rattling on and on.

“That’s right. To be precise, the point is that I’m searching for a fellow, who looks like they can kill me.” (Hifumi)

Helen became speechless due to Hifumi's words.

However, Reni takes a step forward.

“I know where it is.” (Reni)

“Reni!?” (Helen)

“From the place those three appeared at, always head north-east. It's close to a large spring.” (Reni)

Seeing Hifumi nodding with a “I see”, Reni laughed delightfully.

“Why did you tell him?” (Helen)

“Hifumi-san is probably a lot, lot stronger than the tiger people. Papa said it. Really strong people are very gentle.” (Reni)

“Therefore, Hifumi-san, who kindly gives me such tasty sweets, should be strong enough to not lose against anyone.” Watching the innocently smiling Reni, Helen dropped her shoulders.

“It can't be helped, I guess... You, escape to this place, if you get injured. Since we are always gathering fruits and medical herbs in this area, we will at least treat your injuries as thanks.” (Helen)

“Well now, thanks for that. I have another question though.” (Hifumi)

“What is it?” Reni tilted her head to the side.

“Isn't there anything delicious to eat you can only find in these wastelands?” (Hifumi)

Is that guy on some kind of sightseeing tour? Helen wasn't even able to voice it out in sheer astonishment.



Straddling the horse and exiting the woods, Hifumi is heading in the direction he was told by Reni.

He passes the signs left by the tiger beastmen. The deed of animals? Having a third of their corpses quickly devoured, the corpses were exposed cruelly.

“Hmm, I see. It’s nice and easy that our destination is the same.”
(Hifumi)

While tapping on the katana at his waist with his fingertips, he rides on the horse in a good mood.

The “delicious thing” Reni told him about is a fruit growing on a tree characteristically growing large ivy’s entangled with each other. It’s flavour can’t be called sweet but it’s refreshing with a single bite.

Not just Reni, even Helen, who listened next to her, had strings of drool hanging from her mouth, thus it was likely the truth.

However, for the last few years the surroundings of the spring, where that tree grows en masse, is occupied by the tiger beastmen. The sheep and rabbit beastmen, who particularly looked forward to those among the blessings of the forest, felt dejected.

As it is just the right occasion, let’s try to make the topic of conversation eating that fruit after I meet the tigers. Hifumi disregarded Helen, who tried to stop him.

Entering the woods, the sun began to sink when he progressed for a while. As the horse started to show signs of exhaustion, Hifumi, who discovered a conspicuously large tree, decided to intentionally pass one night without sleeping here.

Once he dismounted the horse and tied the reins to a suitable tree, he gave it fodder and water, stuffed his own cheeks with around three baked sweets and drank some water himself.

These baked sweets were in fact handmade by Caim. He is a man, who has an oddly high level of femininity with his forte being cooking and cleaning, but he seems to vent stress by making pastry. If he works together with people, who don't go forward according to the prescribed regulations in everything, he will build up stress. Apparently he produces large amounts of pastry by accurately calculating the necessary amount. Hifumi heard that from the other civil officials.

If one enters the office and there's a sweet fragrance drifting about, Caim is tense since it's a sign of him being displeased.

Once Hifumi, who believed it to be perfect for snacking, requested of him to make a few as take-away share, Caim prepared an amount where you could wonder whether he was planning to stock up some shop. It's to the degree, that it doesn't feel like they would decrease, even if Hifumi were to go around and distribute them.

“This thing is the bed, eh?” (Hifumi)

He lies down on a spread out blanket. The pillow is a root, which was protruding from the ground in the right way. Although he tries to roll around a bit, it's just right since it's also dangerous to be sound asleep.

While touching the katana with his left hand, Hifumi calmly closed his eyes.



It was truly by coincidence that the cat beastman, Jaredo, caught sight of Hifumi's figure.

It's unusual for a human to be in the wastelands and even more so in an area, which is separated this far from human habitations. Not to mention that it was the first time for one of them being alone.

At the beginning it was genuine curiosity, but while secretly following him, he stuck out his tongue wondering whether it's not connected to some way to get rich quickly. That was because of his natural greed. (T/N:

And here I thought... “Curiosity killed the cat”...) Although it is called greed, beastmen, who are procuring their food for living by hunting animal opponents and plants, at most wanted to simply eat delicious things or to produce clothes out of solid hides. Something like currency naturally doesn't exist here.

However, Jaredo had the strange habit of collecting rare things since his birth. His plain home, to which he doesn't return often, is filled with things like tools, of which he doesn't know the way of using stolen from corpses, and things dropped by humans, to a degree that there's no space to place one's feet indoor.

(It's the first time I have seen the weapon, that human possesses.)
(Jaredo)

While tagging along out of curiosity, Jaredo's look was obviously drawn to the katana. He decided to take it while the human is sleeping.

And now that chance finally came.

Within the woods, where the veil of darkness descended, it is pitch dark due to even the sky being covered by clouds. Even for Jaredo, who has night-sight, it is only at a level of him being able to see somehow.

(Don't wake up, if you value your life.) (Jaredo)

Jaredo's fighting strength as beastman is low, but he has confidence that he can exceed in speed and strength, if his opponent is a human. Besides, he belongs to a minority among beastman, as he isn't opposed to using weapons.

Even now he is tightly grasping a knife, which has been created by sharpening a bone, for the time he runs into resistance. He is certain that he will carry and use it, if he can obtain the weapon the human has.

But there might be unexpected injuries, if the human struggles desperately. Therefore he chose to take and steal it secretly.

Jaredo, who approached slowly and quietly, changed his position and looked around restlessly with his eyes wide open. He was cautious whether there would be other humans or beastmen hidden in the vicinity.

(This area is close to the settlement of the tiger beastmen after all. It will become troublesome, if they find me.) (Jaredo) At the moment he quietly extended his hand towards the katana, he accidentally saw the face of the human, being next to his feet.

Their eyes met.



It was early morning when a cat beastman came taking refuge in the tiger beastmen settlement while swaying with his right elbow dangling having his entire body covered in injuries all over.

“H-el-p m...” (Jaredo)

It cannot be helped that confusion sprang forth by the way the cat beastman Jaredo clung and frantically begged the first male tiger beastman he found.

Even if there is interaction between cat beastmen and tiger beastmen, that doesn't mean they will particularly help each other either. Rather, the tigers despise cats and there are situations, where they will kidnap if it's a female and torture to death if it's a male upon meeting each other.

“What's up? Someone gave this fellow a beating?”

Believing the injuries of Jaredo being caused by his mates, he called out to his tiger beastmen mates, who were in the vicinity, but all of them answered that they didn't know.

“Ain't that Gafan's group's work? They haven' come back since yesterday.”

Once one of his mates said that, the tiger beastman kicked Jaredo, who drew close, away.

“Hiii... i-it's different! A human is... a human is...” (Jaredo)

As Jaredo, who ranted and raved on in confusion, there's no tiger taking him serious and they laugh at him with "a strange guy came in the morning."

"There ain't no way for a human to come this deep into the wastelands."

"That's not true either though."

Hifumi, who made an appearance by pushing his way through the thicket with a rustling, took a breath and said "I finally got here, huh?"

Looking at the figure of Hifumi, who is carefully picking up the weeds clinging to his hakama and throwing it away, Jaredo screamed.

"A human has really appeared."

"However, it's a bad place he came to. This place is our, the tiger beastmen's, territory. It's been a while since a plaything came along. Don't die too quickly."

All of the male tiger beastmen, who are gathering in groups, are muscular and they are twice as big as Hifumi.

On top of there also being females in considerable numbers, they apparently are thirsting to fight as well. Having arms, which are long and slender, their sharp claws, which can't be compared to the male ruffians from before, are visible.

Even so, Hifumi, without feeling worried, slowly walks towards Jaredo.

"A-Aaaah..." (Jaredo)

Jaredo, whose voice is already unable to do anything else but tremble,

fell on his backside while retreating, but Hifumi caught up to him in the blink of an eye.

“You forgot something.” (Hifumi)

With the sound of hard things clashing against each other, he stabbed the knife, made out of bone, into Jaredo’s crown of the head.

Jaredo convulsed for a short while with his eyes rolling back, but before long he died.

“So, that’s that.” (Hifumi)

Confirming the death of Jaredo, Hifumi called out to the tiger beastman close-by.

“Where’s the spring? Aren’t there tasty fruits close to it?” (Hifumi)

“Haa?”

“Didn’t you listen? The place of the spring.” (Hifumi)

Due to Hifumi’s behaviour being similar to that of a fool, the tiger beastmen quickly surrounded Hifumi.

“Oh, aren’t you fairly nimble? Was it Gafan? You are a lot faster than him.” (Hifumi)

As Hifumi asked them “Please last a bit longer than those guys”, the beastmen became more and more enraged.

“Don’t babble!”

As they attacked by swinging their claws downwards, Hifumi hit the wrist with a fist, formed out of the joints of middle finger and index finger.

“Uaah?”

Hifumi, who extended his hand to the defenceless face once the beastman drew back his arm, which was hit with pinpoint attack causing a sense of pain, grabbed the hair of the head and chin.

“See, it’s easy to grab it.” (Hifumi)

While he was laughing, the sound of pulling out the fur and breaking their bones resounded. Then he twisted the beastman’s neck and broke it.

Without even leaking a voice, the beastman dies and crumbles down.

“A-A h-human has...”

Due to taking human opponents lightly as being weak, and even more so as their mate was killed barehanded, the beastmen were surprised.

“A-A coincidence!”

“In what way?” (Hifumi)

The beastman leaped at him while roaring. Throwing the counterweight of the kusarigama, it entangled their feet and they were pulled down sideways.

The beastman, who was severely knocked into their flank, fainted in agony, was drawn close in no time and had its throat sliced open with the

sickle.

“Move once you think a bit more.” (Hifumi)

Hifumi is disgusted and a section of the beastmen wall stirs.

“Somehow it doesn’t seem like you are a normal human.”

With the beastmen making a path, a male, who had an even bigger physique than the other beastmen, came walking towards Hifumi through the open spot.

“You are this place’s boss?” (Hifumi)

“That’s right. Looks like you did as you please since morning.”

After the tiger boss looked at the three corpses, he threatened Hifumi by baring its fangs.

“What’s so fun about showing your teeth? Rather than that, although you say you are the person in charge, you have no education.” (Hifumi)

“Education, you say?”

“Humph”, the boss snorts.

“You humans and us are different. We kill if we consider them an enemy. Something like expressly talking it out...”

“That’s not the case.”

Interrupting his speech, Hifumi folded his arms and his mouth curved into a ^.

“There’s no unfairness or damnation in fighting. You say you immediately kill, if it’s an enemy. That’s fine. That’s truly great.” (Hifumi)

“But”, Hifumi points at the corpse of a beastman.

“Why are you unable to do anything but cutting with your claws!? Are those fangs a decoration!? Won’t you easily break something hard by biting it!? If you are tigers, you have to lead your enemies by the nose by moving around! Aren’t you just slow-footed dimwits!?” (Hifumi)

Due to Hifumi suddenly bursting in anger, the tiger beastmen can’t do anything but being dumbfounded.

“I came to the wastelands wondering whether there are fellows slightly stronger than humans. And once I look at the results, there were tigers, I can only remember as idiots, a thieving cat and a sheep and rabbit, which are unrelated to fighting! Are you looking down on me!?” (Hifumi)

Due to Hifumi saying all he has to say, the tiger boss’ eyebrows trembled and he roared.

“The likes of humans don’t bark!”

Hifumi is attacked by a strike that can’t be compared in speed to the other beastmen.

He let it go past by barely lowering his head, but several strands of his forehead bangs were ripped away.

“Ooh...” (Hifumi)

Due to the situation of Hifumi raising his voice, the boss grinned broadly and laughed.

“Somehow you dodged it, eh? But the next will...”

“Aren’t you able to do it, if you try!?” (Hifumi)

Hifumi, who showed a sparkling smile, stows the kusarigama away and retrieves the katana.

In the presence of the boss, who ended up hardening due to the unforeseen reaction, Hifumi drew his katana.

Inhaling his breath through the nose, he slowly exhales it out of his mouth.

“Alright! Shall we begin then!?” (Hifumi)

Chapter 86: Hey Brother

The tiger beastmen's boss plans to fight by himself after all.

The other beastmen are standing in a circle around Hifumi and their boss as if fencing them in.

“You will regret making fun of tiger beastmen. Even if you swing around such thin weapon, it won't be able to defend against my claws.”

Hifumi doesn't even feel intimidated by the boss, who laughs smugly baring his fangs, as he lowered his katana loosely.

“As it is a tedious talk, hurry up and come.” (Hifumi)

Calmly removing his look from the boss in front of him, Hifumi also called out to the beastmen surrounding them in the vicinity.

“Isn't it boring to be just watching? If you have power and a will to fight, feel free to attack me without reservations. I will handle you all at once.” (Hifumi)

Due to his blatant provocation the air in the surrounding was tinged with a feeling of tension right away.

“That's right, it's this air. The determination to kill, to kill your opponent. If that's also encompassed by action and ability, I won't complain.” (Hifumi)

During the time Hifumi was talking, the boss came sending an attack brandishing the claws of both arms, but Hifumi isn't as nice to receive an attack he has already seen once.

“There!”

The hands of the boss, which came clawing at Hifumi’s side of the face, are slapped away upon touch.

Hifumi laughed with a “Kaka” at the boss, who has a look of disbelief as his palms swelled up straight away.

“Even if your bodies are those of a beastman, there’s almost no difference to a human body. I know that because I saw the fellows, who were sliced open yesterday.” (Hifumi)

The ones Hifumi is talking about are the three, who met and attacked him just to have the tables turned on them and then had their corpses being ripped apart by animals.

“No matter what kind of training you receive, in the end your bodies consist of meat and water being covered by skin. Thus it will become swollen, if it is beaten vigorously.” (Hifumi)

“What incomprehensible things are you talking about!? A swelling like this is of no concern and can’t even be called an injury at this level!”

The instant the roaring boss spread both his arms, Hifumi stepped into his bosom and this time hit the solar plexus with his palm using all his strength.

“Gubuu... Boeee.”

Without being able to suppress what’s rising from within, the boss scatters vomit from his mouth.

“I don’t need this”, Hifumi put his katana back on his waist and grabbed an arm of the tiger’s boss who’s miserably spilling tears. Pressing the claws into the swollen palm, he pulled the arm without stopping and tore

it off.

“Gyaaaaa!”

Trying to hold the right hand, where blood spilled in an endless stream, the tiger boss raised a scream.

The tiger beastmen in the surroundings had their breath taken away seeing his appearance.

It was inconceivable for them to see their boss being toyed with this easily.

“Even a human can use his fingernails. Like this.” (Hifumi)

Cutting through the wind with his right hand, the fingertips grazed the boss' throat. Without being able to raise his voice, the boss, who spurted blood from the nape of the neck, collapsed and died.

Hifumi, looking down on him from nearby, calmly mutters,

“Hmm. Even the location of veins is roughly the same as with humans, huh? With slightly stronger physical strength, it's at the level of them having animal ears and tails?” (Hifumi)

“Well then”, Hifumi looks at the tiger beastman in his surrounding, who had completely stiffened.

“Look! Because you guys didn't help, this guy died, no?” (Hifumi)

“H-How dare you!”

The tiger youth, who came rushing while weeping, was split in lower and upper half by the drawn katana* and at the same time the others raised their voices in anger, (T/N: battou ... the art of using the drawing

inertia to deliver a powerful strike), see Kenshin the Battousai)

“Bastard! We won’t let you return alive!”

“It’s the boss’ enemy! Everyone, kill him!”

Beastmen, leaping at him as they roared, come approaching Hifumi from all directions without any distinction whether they are male or female.

“Oh, did you finally decide to go for it!?” (Hifumi)

While decapitating two heads in one go, Hifumi exclaims delightfully.

Changing the direction of the katana by turning around, he stabs it towards his back cutting open the stomach of a woman in the back.

Slaying yet another in front with the katana using the momentum, he freely moves around between the enemies while cutting at throats and thighs. Meanwhile he watches the influence of blood and confirms in a composed manner that they have a different structure than humans.

At the time all of those, who were at that place, were turned into corpses, he fully finished the inspection regarding the tiger beastman’s body structure.

Wiping his katana with a paper, he sheaths it into its scabbard.

Feeling refreshed, he inhales his breath through the nose and exhales it from the mouth.

“... I want to see the contents of other beastmen as well.” (Hifumi)

Hifumi went to look for the spring, the sheep beastwoman, Reni, told him about.



Hifumi, who left the settlement dotted with plain huts made out of animal skins, leaves and wood, easily discovered the spring, which had a size of around a soccer field.

With water that is as transparent that one could see even into quite the depth, one can observe small fishes and living things similar to shrimps.

As he surveys his vicinity, there were the trees characteristically growing large ivy's entangled with each other as told by Reni. A large amount of red fruits dangled on the grown branches.

“This, huh?” (Hifumi)

Plucking off a fist-sized fruit, Hifumi bites into it without hesitation.

With a crispy and chewy texture similar to a pear, a sweet fragrance like that of a juicy peach spreads through his nose and mouth. With an ample amount of moisture, the fruit even slides down the throat smoothly.

“Certainly, this is delicious.” (Hifumi)

He ate around two successively and dumped the large seed in their core.

“It was tasty. But, only this much is a little...” (Hifumi)

At the moment he finished to eat the fruits, both sides of Hifumi's mouth are smeared with the bright red fruit juice. It completely looks as if he has eaten a person.

Hifumi, who looked at the spring, looked at both his hands and entered the spring with a splash while wearing his clothes saying “Well, it can't be helped.”

At first he received a thrill from the clearly chilly water, but before long his body got used to it and he immersed himself in the coolness of the spring forgetting about the heat of the wastelands.

Leaving the spring before his body gets completely chilled, he takes off his hakama and wrings it out. As he was doing that, two tiger beastmen children came walking from the direction where the settlement is at.

Although he can't grasp the age of a beastman, a boy, at the age of around elementary school to the upper grades of elementary school, is leading a girl, a head shorter than him, which can be considered his younger sister. The boy stared at Hifumi with his black eyes. The girl lowered her sight having a face filled with fright.

“Human...”

Plainly looking at the figure of Hifumi, the boy showed a surprised expression, but that changed right away into an expression of rage baring his fangs.

“Did you kill our fathers? Human!”

Seeing the face of the boy, who came dashing after separating his hand which was connected with his younger sister, Hifumi slaps the wet hakama at him while staying expressionless.

“Hii...”

The boy, who had the side of his face hit with a power on the level of a whip, began to cry as he rolled on the ground in front of the girl, who couldn't raise her voice due to her fright.

Hifumi, who has put on the hakama and quietly ignored them, arranged the fold of his hakama with his fingers while being impressed by the climate of the wastelands, which began to dry it right away.

“So, who are you guys?” (Hifumi)

The young boy, who finally got up, showed a mix of fear and anger in his expression.

Without an answer from the tiger boy, Hifumi sighed.

“Well, I don’t give a damn who you are anyway.” (Hifumi)

Bringing his face close in one go, Hifumi looked directly into the eyes of the boy.

“If you still hate me once you grow up a bit more, come at me any time.” (Hifumi)

Pointing in the direction where the corpses of the tiger beastmen are, Hifumi laughs broadly.

“You better make sure to be able to fight properly. If you are weaker than me at that time, you will suffer that kind of future.” (Hifumi)

The young boy, who burst into tears being overwhelmed by bitterness, was hugged by the girl.

Hifumi, who irresponsibly told him “Do your best”, neglected them, plucked off absolutely every fruit and tossed them into his darkness storage.

Passing a fruit each to the boy and girl with a throw, he quickly left.

The boy, wiping his tears, bites into the fruit after staring at it. Although the fruit should be delicious, he muttered “It’s not tasty at all” due to the steadily falling tears.

The girl looks at the fruit and bites into it while weeping likewise next to him.

We have no one to rely on anymore. I have to become strong, the boy, who threw away the seed, returns to the village. It won’t do to not bury the deceased adults in the ground.



After that, Hifumi, who annihilated a few settlements formed by wolf and lion beastmen, got thoroughly tired of fighting against beastman opponents.

And at the same time he got lost.

With the woods disappearing in front of him surprisingly, the wastelands literally continue as far as the eye can see.

“Won’t I dry up before reaching the Knight Country or such, if it’s like this?” (Hifumi)

He feels that even the horse’s steps are somewhat heavy.

Although Hifumi pondered for a while, he decided to return temporarily after gathering his thoughts. He thought that he would at least need a guide to lead him until a city becomes visible.

Since it isn’t a game, he doesn’t want to waste his time until he stumbles upon one by wandering around aimlessly either.

Changing his direction, he heads the way, where the forests were, and even the horse’s pacing took a turn towards the better.

As he is heading towards the woods, which faintly came in sight, Hifumi’s sense feels a presence after a long time.

“Yo, yo, it’s been a while.”

“You, eh?” (Hifumi)

What appeared in front of Hifumi is the figure of the shinigami, which is no more than a floating head.

“Why is it only your head?” (Hifumi)

“Oops. How impolite of me.”

The shinigami, who showed an exaggerated surprise although only on his face, revealed his full body from within a thick fog.

“At the time I appeared in front of Prime Minister-san, it has only been hair as ‘my power won’t recover since Hifumi-san isn’t using darkness magic’, you know.”

“In reality, if it is a world where killing people is this common, I will become happy in reverse.” Hifumi doesn’t even look at the shinigami, who sticks out his tongue, and advances on his horse.

“So, what business do you have with me that you even purposely come to such place?” (Hifumi)

“Something like distance has no influence on me. Though my power isn’t at the level to span over the whole world, as expected. Was it ancient magic? It was something great allowing gods and people to leap in one go.”

The shinigami, who keeps up with Hifumi staying at his side while floating in mid-air, displayed a large nod.

“I don’t particularly care about your interests. Rather than that, how’s the development in the capital?” (Hifumi)

“Good grief, what rude person to use a god as errand boy. Prime Minister-san became aware of the aforementioned magic. He hasn’t reported it to the lovely queen, but he will likely decide to use the magic in a not so far future.”

The shinigami says that in absolute satisfaction.

“At any rate, I didn’t believe I would risk getting killed once again meeting you again.”

“Besides, that the time will come that I have to earnestly apologize to a human opponent”, the shinigami showed a bitter smile.

Actually, the shinigami, intending to poke fun at Hifumi, who had become alone at some point, turned up on one occasion. At that time Hifumi slashed at him by suddenly drawing the katana and attacking in the same stroke. The shinigami had to completely surrender as its arm was sent flying.

The current shinigami is moving around as Hifumi’s underling.

“However, thanks to Hifumi-san causing a war and killing a lot, I became very lively as well. For the time being, I will report to you while en route. I will cooperate with you to my utmost ability for things to reach the climax you desire.”

“Therefore, please kill a lot more, okay?” Leaving those words, the shinigami vanished.

Without replying, Hifumi proceeds on his horse while quietly showing a thin smile.



“So, you are telling us to show you the way?” (Helen)

“Gimme a break!” Helen threw those words at Hifumi.

Reni, next to her, is all shook up.

“You might not know, however the beastmen, who were close to human countries, are all gone. There’s a rumour going around that they have

been caught and went through a bitter experience.” (Helen)

“For weak types of beastmen it is impossible and dangerous to get close to humans”, Helen clearly refused him.

“B-But, Hifumi-san is troubled...” (Reni)

“Reni!” (Helen)

The excited Helen’s attack turns upon Reni.

“You, just because you received a little amount of sweets, you are trusting a human far too easily! Certainly, those were sweet and delicious, but... this and that are different!” (Helen)

It looks like even Helen was pleased with Caim’s handmade baked sweet.

“Will there be a proper reward?” (Reni)

“A human will probably use money or such to express their gratitude, right? Even if we received such thing...” (Helen)

What Hifumi took out under the nose of Helen, who was in the middle of talking, was that fruit, he had excessively harvested in the vicinity of the spring.

“This is the fruit I told you about!” (Reni)

Due to Reni getting excited and going “Amazing, amazing”, Helen folded her arms and snorted.

“Hu-Humph! Us risking our lives for a human just because one such fruit is...” (Helen)

Taking out one after the other, he piles up red, ripe fruits in front of Helen and Reni. They emitted a sweet aroma.

Reni gets excited. “Although there should have been plenty of tiger beastmen”, she is eagerly interested.

“So? What will you do?” (Hifumi)

Even Helen surrendered to the words of receiving more once they finish Hifumi’s job.

“Can you wait a bit? If I go slight far away together with Reni, we have to go tell that to our mothers.” (Helen)

Although the two carried fruits away, it didn’t take much time until they came back empty-handed.

“Since I told them that we will go harvesting slightly far away, it will be alright for a while. Apart from that, you will properly protect us, if other beastmen appear, right?” (Helen)

“It will be fine, Helen. Hifumi-san is strong after all.” (Reni)

For some reason, Helen, who saw the state of Reni having full trust in Hifumi, drooped her ears in worry.

Thus, Hifumi, who gained the two as guides, headed towards the Knight Country once again.

Chapter 87: Walking Disaster

Hifumi, who walks holding the reins matching the two beastgirls that can't follow the pace after all, leaves the forest and advances into the blazing sun of the wastelands.

“So, what are you going to do once you reach the human country?”
(Helen)

Helen looks up at Hifumi, who's a head taller than her.

“First I will have a look. After looking? I will crush it? Well, I will decide it at that time.” (Hifumi)

“Crush it, you say...” (Helen)

Watching Helen's stunned expression, Reni continued her words with a wry smile,

“Hifumi-san, you came from a human country in the other direction, right? Aren't you afraid to travel the wastelands by yourself?” (Reni)

“Correct, I'm not afraid.” (Hifumi)

Due to Hifumi replying nonchalantly, Helen shakes her ears and leaks a snort through her nose.

“Unlike with the tigers, how did it work out with the wolves? As it seems that they come attacking in groups, isn't it impossible for a single person to oppose them?” (Helen)

“If it's wolf beastmen, I killed several tens of them. Sneakily following

me without even striking up a conversation, several of them came plunging at me. Rolling on the ground after having their noses systematically beaten, I stepped on their necks and broke them.” (Hifumi)

“Aren’t these fellows able to speak human language?” Hifumi says seemingly pouting.

“How amazing.” (Reni)

“Though I don’t think that’s the issue here...” (Helen)

Compared to advancing through the wastelands, where it’s survival of the fittest, they welcome the evening of that day in a relaxed mood.

With Hifumi taking out several dishes from within his storage, the three of them eat their dinner in a circle. Their dessert is that red fruit.

Apparently it is called by the name “Bodan.” Many beastmen like to eat it, but since it can’t be found anywhere but at places with clear water, they apparently treat it as a feast once they stumble upon it occasionally.

Currently those are casually being piled up in front of the girls.

“They are delicious, after all.” (Reni)

Reni laughs delightfully, but the area around her mouth is bright red with fruit juice.

“Eat them in a bit more refined manner. You are a glutton.” (Helen)

Even as Helen says so, she spills a smile due to having bodan after a long time.

“From tomorrow on we will pass through the areas of the bear and leopard tribes, however... stay docile, okay? I’d like you to excuse us from

getting involved in your fights.” (Helen)

Once her stomach bulged, Helen called out to Hifumi.

The wastelands, which are in-between the human countries, have the areas of the strong tribes at the outer edges, fairly close to the locations where humans live on both sides of the wastelands, and the centre of the wastelands, which are inhabited by the weaker tribes.

At the edges there are many forests and rivers. But, although there is also the reason of the nature being abundant in the east and west controlled by the strong beastmen, there is likewise the reason that the weaker tribes avoid human habitations, because in case humans discover one of them there are cases of them being caught as slaves.

“Up to this point there are still many tribes, like us, who don’t like to fight, but tomorrow we will enter a dangerous area.” (Helen)

“I see. Well, then it’s fine with you guiding just that far. Once you tell me the direction to head for afterwards, I will go by myself.” (Hifumi)

Hifumi consented easily with her.

Even though Helen showed a facial expression that it was only natural, Reni had a lonely look.

“Then tomorrow will be goodbye?” (Reni)

“I will have to pass through the wastelands on my way back anyway. We might meet again if you have good luck.” (Hifumi)

“Humph. Before that, do your best to not get killed by the bears and leopards.” (Helen)

“In the first place”, Helen continued,

“I wonder why a human like you wants to crush a human country? You are a weirdo.” (Helen)

“A reason, huh? Let me see...” (Hifumi)

Pondering about it for a while, Hifumi shook his head.

“To put it simply, since I have the principle that it’s just normal to crush an enemy, that’s the way it is.” (Hifumi)

“Enemy? Isn’t it only natural for humans to fight back, if they are attacked?” (Reni)

“No, it’s different from that.” (Hifumi)

He quickly denies Reni’s words.

“After getting attacked is too late. There’s plenty reason to kill them, if they appear as if they want to attack.” (Hifumi)

“Isn’t that slightly... excessive?”

“Don’t say such foolishness. You might get killed without the time to counter-attack after getting attacked. It’s important to decide whether to kill or not as fast as possible.” (Hifumi)

“You are the same”, Hifumi points at Helen.

“I am?” (Helen)

“Don’t you have the habit of judging in an instant whether you should run away once you determined a sound you heard? If you were just a little bit late in your judgement, that would lead to your death.” (Hifumi)

“Uhh... certainly.” (Helen)

“Because I have the power to fight, I kill without fleeing. That’s the only difference there is.” (Hifumi)

In the time while Hifumi was talking to Helen, Reni brooded over something, but suddenly lifting her head, she stared at Hifumi.

“Strength to fight is necessary after all?” (Reni)

“Not really?” (Hifumi)

The two girls stare blankly due to Hifumi saying this forthrightly.

“If you want to fight, you train and use your head, though you might have to put in great and desperate efforts to kill. I don’t particularly believe that everyone in this world should possess military power.”
(Hifumi)

“However, you say to kill if it’s an enemy...”

“It’s only me who does this. For a fellow, who knows they can’t fight or has no interest in fighting, it is the height of idiocy to oppose someone they can’t win against. If you feel like making an enemy out of someone and fight them, you probably shouldn’t complain about getting killed either.” (Hifumi)

With these words Hifumi lies down on the spread-out cloth.

Before anyone noticing, even the horse had entered a pose of sleeping.

“... If that’s the case, you wouldn’t complain, if you someone were to kill you, either?” (Reni)

Hifumi answered Reni’s words, she told as a tease, without turning his sight towards her.

“Of course. Above it being the giving and taking of life, it’s just natural for me to always think that it’s fine even if I die any time.” (Hifumi)

“Go sleep quickly as we will walk tomorrow, too”, Hifumi shut his eyes.

Reni and Helen, who looked at each other, were confused about the strange ways of human thinking.



The reason it was called “Knight Country” was that this nation, Swordland, originated from a knight order, which became alienated from Orsongrande and had immigrated.

At the time of founding the nation it was a poor village, but by building a sturdy bulwark, the commoners, who followed the knights, began to gradually get familiar with hunting and farming. It took a century for it to establish the system of a nation.

Above all, with the knight order from the time of founding possessing considerable might, far from being able to equally compete with the beastmen, they completely repelled the beastmen, who came to attack, on countless occasions.

The person with the highest position among the knights becomes king and each of the other knights supports the king as nobles. That’s the shape of the governmental system.

Although it might be called a nation, it is nothing more but a single, large city. With the centre of the city being surrounded by high walls, the circumference had agricultural land spreading out.

The knights, with their great might, captured beastmen at the time they saw them, had them obey and chose to employ them as labour force. The commoners, who originally likewise engaged in the mortifying manual labour of reclaiming the wastelands, were comforted in their hearts by watching the beastmen doing more dangerous work than themselves and being discarded after abusing them without even giving them proper food.

And even now the system of catching and enslaving beastmen still exists.

“Tsk. Ain’t there anythin’ but brats?”

Spurring on his horse, the man spit out while his armour made clinking sounds.

The soldiers, who are in the vicinity, are cautious of their surroundings

wearing plain leather armours and spears.

“It’s still better than returning without results, but at this rate it will effect my records.”

There was a two-horse cart pulling a load-carrying tray without cover at the place the man turned his sight to.

On top of the load-carrying tray an iron-made cage is placed. Within there are two small, completely exhausted beastmen. It’s the older brother and younger sister, who met Hifumi.

“Andrus-sama, there are no beastmen in the surroundings.”

Due to the soldier asking whether they should move on, the man called Andrus decided to split away from the city a bit further.

Since there’s the possibility of strong beastmen appearing, to the degree that they wouldn’t be able to deal with them, if they separated from the city too far, they have to be careful in their movements.

The knights from the time of founding the nation apparently fought with the bear and tiger beastmen, but Andrus believes this to be a tale. For the knights, who are currently in Swordland, it’s doubtful whether they could equally fight 1-on-1 against beastmen, who are strong in combat.

“Uuhh...”

It’s the young tigerboy raising a moan as he wakes up within the cage.

“Th-This place is...”

“Did ya snap outta it? If ya stay obedient, ya will be able ta keep living in a far nicer place than yer animal dwelling. Ya will even be able ta eat da

good stuff.” (Andrus)

“Therefore, be nice”, Andrus intended to coerce him with his gaze, but the tigerboy began to shout to let him out of the cage.

“Tsk. He became annoyin’. Oi.” (Andrus)

Calling a single soldier, he ordered him to thrust the sword at the still not conscious tigergirl.

As the soldier did it without a single shred of hesitation, the tigerboy shut his mouth.

“If ya ain’t quiet, I will kill dat female brat over there and not ya. She will be simply stabbed from outside.” (Andrus)

“Shut yer trap, if ya get it”, Andrus says over his shoulders and returns his gaze towards the direction of their travel. Thereupon he discovered a single bearchild sleeping visibly hidden in the shades of the trees ahead.

“Oh, whatcha great omen. Though it’s a brat once again, da quota had been reached.” (Andrus)

By the order of Andrus, who felt like having already caught it, the soldiers slowly and quietly approach the bearchild.

The instant a soldier, who turned his spearhead towards the bearchild, advanced to a distance where he could touch it after a few steps,

“It’s the humans! Run awaaaaay!”

The tigerboy within the cage shouted with all his strength.

“Ya shitty bastard!”

Although Andrus raised his voice in anger, the bearchild, who had already lifted its head after waking up, has been surprised in noticing the

humans, who had approached right next to it.

“Tsk. Surround it quickly! I don’t even mind, if it has a few injuries here n’ there.” (Andrus)

The bearchild was a girl, who had cute, rotund eyes and small, round ears. Even if her hands and legs had wounds, there will be demand for a beargirl with such a nice appearance.

“It will be well worth the time”, before the eyes of Andrus, who mumbled that, a single soldier, who tried to shorten the distance by running fast upon his order, was abruptly blown away.

“What is it!?”

In front of the panicking soldiers’ eyes a gigantic bear with a height of above 3 m stood in the way in order to protect the beargirl.

Having grown tough-looking fur, it possesses thick, sharp claws on the powerful, fat fingers on both paws. It is trembling in rage baring its fangs.

“Human trash! I won’t permit you targeting my daughter!”

Closing in on a soldier with a nimbleness that doesn’t fit its large build, everything above the soldier’s neck was gone with an explosive sound once it waved its right paw.

In addition to beating the soldiers, who approached closer, to death, the bearman catches the thrust-out spear with his teeth and hits a soldier’s belly with a kick.

At the time the soldier, who vomited out his intestines with spasms, collapsed, the bearman came in front of Andrus.

“Tsk!” (Andrus)

Andrus, quickly drawing his sword, jumped off the horse.

Although the bearman's claws fail to seize Andrus, the horse's flank is torn up and it raises a shriek.

Taking a distance by rolling on the ground, the bearman had already approached immediately before his eyes when he lifted his head.

He protects himself against the downward-swung arms with his sword.

Even though he managed to stop them somehow, a pain travels through his left arm due to the impact and it broke. Andrus knew that by instinct.

At the moment the bearman raised his arms overhead once more, Andrus swings his sword sweeping sideways with only his right hand.

Grazing the chest of the bearman, he inflicts a shallow wound, but without minding he evades the swung arms by scurrying.

He was cut deeply at a part of his face that failed to avoid it, however Andrus hasn't the leeway to worry about that right now.

“Ooooh!”

The sword of Andrus, who finished getting up in a sorry mess, inflicted yet another wound at the flank of the bearman.

But, Andrus' hard struggle ended at that point.

The bearman, who took an evasive stance by bending back, severely kicked the nether region of Andrus with his right foot as is.

The large paws of his foot smash Andrus' crotch and sink further into him.

Falling to the ground with such a pain that he can't even leak a voice, the bearman quickly crushed Andrus underfoot and thus he died.

“Fuu...”

“Dad, are you alright?”

Once the beargirl rushed over seeing it all from the beginning to the end

while being scared, the bearman showed a gentle smile making his expression of rage from before a lie.

“Yea, of course. You have no injuries, Olra?”

“I’m fine. I noticed them before they could hurt me since that kid called out to me.” (Olra)

“Which reminds me, I was made aware of the situation by that voice as well.”

The bearman, who approached the cage, grabbed the iron grid and burst it open with all his strength.

“It was a courageous act. Thanks to it, my daughter was saved. You have my thanks.”

The bearman, calling himself Salgu, pulled out the tigerboy from the cage and helped out with the unconscious tigergirl by gently carrying her.

“Umm...”

Watching the battle, the tigerboy, who was dumbfounded until he was saved, resolves himself and speaks.

“Yea?” (Salgu)

“Will I also be able to become as strong as mister?”



It was a letter for Imeraria, who is the new Queen and very busy with the daily governmental affairs, reporting the schedule of the royal capital's visit delivered by Fokalore.

Although a noble has the liberty of leaving and entering a territory, there is an unwritten rule to send a notice before entering the capital, albeit that was completely ignored by Hifumi. It's for the sake of showing that a noble, who entered the capital, has no ulterior motive, even if there are also cases of them being summoned by the king.

“From Fokalore? Just who the heck is coming here?” (Imeraria)

Not only the nobles but even the commoners knew very well about Hifumi having left for a long journey towards the wastelands to fight by himself against the beastmen, who opposed mankind for a long time. It has become a commonly repeated topic among the townspeople as the start of a new legend.

“It appears to be Earl Tohno's wife, who is coming for a visit of the royal capital.” (Adol)

Prime Minister Adol, who read the documents, calmly replied to Imeraria's question.

“Apparently she is hoping for an audience with you, Your Majesty. Moreover she is even requesting my presence.” (Adol)

“Origa-san, is it...? However, just what kind of business does she have with us?” (Imeraria)

“Well, the notice doesn't explain that far.” (Adol)

Imeraria cocked her head in puzzlement for a while, but considering it inevitable, she issued instructions in order to prepare the arrangements.

“Is it fine?” (Adol)

“She is Hifumi-sama’s wife. It’s impossible to ignore her. Besides, it’s probably better to directly confirm whether her aim is for her own purposes or upon Hifumi-sama’s instruction.” (Imeraria)

“I see”, Adol nodded and left the office.

“Really, he is a person who causes worries no matter whether he is here or not... I wonder where in the wastelands he is currently rampaging about.” (Imeraria)

Although it wasn’t by all means, she wasn’t able to imagine him dying a dog’s death in the wastelands. And, simultaneously with Hifumi’s face, she recalled Origa’s face at the time they met quite a while ago when she was still a slave.

“... What is she really aiming for?” (Imeraria)

If possible, Imeraria was earnestly hoping to lead a quiet life at least for the period Hifumi wasn’t there.

Chapter 88: One Way Or Another

“I hope you are in splendid health, Your Majesty, the Queen.” (Origa)

“Such stiff greeting is unnecessary, Origa-san.” (Imeraria)

The dress of Origa, who brought several chamberlains along to the royal castle, was different from the time she accompanied Hifumi as chamberlain while also serving as combat personnel. It resembled a dress worn by noble women. It had a bit leeway in regards to the size of the sleeves and was a blue costume, which used high-priced fabric.

Holding the iron-ribbed fan in her hand, Origa, who keeps her head high and engenders a graceful ambience, was the centre of attention even within the ruler’s castle.

There also was a noble, who tried to praise her beauty, but he turned pale after his colleague informed him of her status.

And currently she is attending a meeting with Queen Imeraria in her office.

Originally Origa, who is no more than a commoner that only became the wife of a noble, isn’t permitted to attend in this situation, but with her husband being far too special and, on top, it being unknown what her purpose is, it was chosen to carry out a private meeting rather than a formal audience, where she very likely would have been seen by other nobles.

“First off, congratulations on your marriage. Did you get used to life as a noble? Because you were working as adventurer originally, it’s probably a different environment from before.” (Imeraria)

“Let me see. Since there isn’t much difference whether you are a commoner or noble in Fokalore, I don’t even particularly have such feelings. If pushed to say, then it’s harder to “deal” with snuggling up to

my husband.” (Origa)

“Ara. Currently Hifumi-sama is the sole large noble boasting high fame and leading in vastness of territory within Orsongrande. Surrounding yourself with excellent personnel is also an important matter.” (Imeraria)

“That’s right, isn’t it? Since I’m also welcoming ladies coming to meddle as if they are sister-in-laws, it’s essential to have personnel in order to support me. If I handled each and every party, my nerves will end up getting worn down.” (Origa)

Origa deliberately intends to put Imeraria at distance. Even though Imeraria uses words of assistance, Origa has recognised her as the woman being the most intimate with Hifumi, if she excludes herself. Thus biting words rushed out of her mouth towards Imeraria, although not intentional. Origa is aware of her own anxiety whether she is really a good wife, however she can’t reach a conclusion whether that’s in regards to “the person called Hifumi” or “the domestic nobles.”

After having verbal attacks for a while, both of them taste some black tea.

Given that Origa and Imeraria are showing smiles, it might look like a harmonious tea party from the perspective of an outsider.

Prime Minister Adol, who is present, didn’t even savour the black tea’s taste he drank as he has recollections similar to having his stomach pierced with worries from all directions.

“S-So, Mrs. Tohno, this time you not only requested Imeraria-sama’s presence but mine as well in your message. But, what sort of important business is it?” (Adol)

Wholeheartedly wanting to be freed from being at this place, Adol quickly cut at the real issue at hand.

“... Adol-sama, it seems that you have investigated various things in the reference room recently.” (Origa)

“Wh-What are...” (Adol)

“Given that I have attached the investigation, there’s no meaning in

denying it. ... Accordingly, it appears you have been searching for documents about ancient magic, right? What's the purpose of that?" (Origa)

While Origa indifferently talks about it, Adol is drenched in sweat. Clenching his fists placed on top his knees, he wrecks his brain over whether there is a good excuse, but as nothing comes to mind, he gets even more flustered.

"Prime Minister, you..." (Imeraria)

Even Imeraria considered his state as suspicious.

"I was aware that you were enthusiastically investigating some matters. You were burdened with more troubles than before, Prime Minister. It's not only once or twice I relied on your knowledge and experience either. But, what's this about you investigating ancient magic? Though I heard that you aren't able to use magic, Prime Minister?" (Imeraria)

As the questions poured on even from Imeraria's side, Adol, who had an idea, frankly talked about the "return spell" for returning Hifumi to his former world.

Given that it has already been proven that Hifumi has military power, which is difficult to handle even with sneak attacks and large numbers, he has been considering to propose it as apology, if there is a way to return him to his previous world, is what the prime minister decided to begin to explain to people about his own plan.

"Hifumi-sama to his previous world... such a thing is possible?" (Imeraria)

The instant she hears about it as method of apology, Imeraria displayed a cheerful expression, however she asked with a slightly gloomy face after she apparently has thought about something.

Adol, who is worried about that matter as well, wasn't able to take back the words, which left his mouth next.

“... As a matter of fact I discovered records of that magic. Since there are many parts, which are incomprehensible if you aren't a magician, I can't really say if the analysis will proceed in the future from now on.” (Adol)

“Is that so? Then let me help you with that as well. Although there are various parts to consider with Hifumi, having him return is the best...” (Imeraria)

Imeraria was startled looking at Origa's face.

Since Imeraria has known about her fanatic love towards Hifumi, she belatedly realized that her remark likely would infuriate Origa.

But, Origa's smile hasn't crumbled.

“Origa-san, this matter is...” (Imeraria)

“I will also help you with that project.” (Origa)

Due to Imeraria calling out to her in panic, Origa clearly declared,

“Rescuing Orsongrande, the hero-sama from another world, who not only advanced the combat but also the craftsmanship of this world in one go, finished his duty and went back to his own world... It's a splendid, complete epic, right?” (Origa)

“I-Is that alright with you?” (Imeraria)

Towards Imeraria, asking with a trembling voice, Origa, drinking a sip of black tea, replied “Of course.”

“Hifumi-sama, who is my husband, isn't a small existence, that will be done with only this world. As I'm also able to use magic, I will give my maximum cooperation for that research. However...” (Origa)

Imeraria, who put down her cup, gazes at Adol.

“If you were to look like you are pretending the return of Hifumi-sama, Fokalore will immediately announce its independence and begin a war with all of Orsongrande.” (Origa)

“T-That is a remark that can even be interpreted as threat directed at Her Majesty, the Queen! Besides, no matter how powerful the soldiers of Fokalore might be, something like challenging the soldiers of the entire nation is...” (Adol)

“There’s isn’t any necessity or such to take on all soldiers. For us something like getting rid of only the important people crawling in the castle is a simple matter.” (Origa)

“But, Hifumi-sama is...” (Imeraria)

“Your Majesty, it isn’t a nice feeling for you to call my husband’s name in an overly personal manner.” (Origa)

“Aren’t those words to merely interrupt the words of the sovereign?” As one would expect, even Imeraria had lost her patience.

“Hifumi-sama won’t attack us, if we don’t oppose him. Please cooperate with us without fail. So, Origa-san, why is it acceptable for you to cooperate with us?” (Imeraria)

Due to Imeraria deliberately not changing her way of calling him, Origa opened her eyes widely. Imeraria’s feelings towards Hifumi might be stronger than I thought, causing Origa to raise up Imeraria’s rank as target to be cautious about within her mind.

“What I’m desiring is to be together with him even at the time he is sent away from this world. Therefore, I’m even ready to help you at the time of return.” (Origa)

“Hey, I will probably be useful”, is what Origa said.



“I want to try seeing a human country.” (Reni)

Is what Reni suddenly blurted out during the time of them having breakfast.

“W-What are you saying?” (Helen)

Helen, who chewed an after-meal dessert bodan, was surprised and spilled bright red fruit juice from her mouth.

Hifumi is silently listening to their talk.

“In yesterday’s story of Hifumi-san, humans weren’t people, who only wage war. I wondered, if there are people living a different life. Besides, we aren’t as strong as Hifumi-san. Since I don’t have the experience and skill like you, Helen, who can hear various sounds, I think it’s wrong if I don’t get to know a lot more different things.” (Reni)

Reni’s facial expression is serious. She said it was the result of carefully thinking before sleep and wished for Helen to understand it as she bowed to her.

“Hifumi-san, forgive me for being a burden ahead of time. Although we will enter a human city, would you take me along as well?” (Reni)

“You are unreasonable, Reni! If a beastman is discovered in a human country, they will be killed or turned into slaves!” (Helen)

“It will be fine as long as I’m together with Hifumi-san. Therefore I believe that this is the first and last chance.” (Reni)

Hifumi, who remained mute while having his arms folded, expressionlessly turned towards Reni and bluntly said,

“So, what do you plan to do after seeing the life of humans?” (Hifumi)

“That is, even I still don’t know that. ... But, rather than living secretly,

without knowing anything, in the wastelands, where I don't know when I might get killed, I wondered whether there isn't something a lot more different." (Reni)

"I don't know anything about the destination country. I'm unable to show you around. There is also the possibility of you getting involved in strife." (Hifumi)

"So far I lived by hiding and running away in the wastelands. At the time of battle I will be able to preserve by hiding in order to somehow not get killed. You don't have to show me around the country. I thought I want to see how humans are living their lives." (Reni)

Hifumi and Reni locked their gazes onto each other for a short while.

In front of Helen, who looked as if worrying with her heart going pit-a-pat, Hifumi placed his hand on Reni's head.

"Got you. It's a good thing for a child to study by observing various things. Moreover, it's fine if you have decided that you want to do so by yourself. However, in Swordland you will let me treat you as my slave." (Hifumi)

"Understood. Please treat me well." (Reni)

"W-Wait a bit! Treat as slave, you say..." (Helen)

"Don't worry", Hifumi proudly says facing Helen.

"If it's the treatment of slaves, that's something I'm familiar with. Besides, it's merely a pretence." (Hifumi)

"B-But..." (Helen)

"It's fine." (Reni)

Reni gently hugged Helen.

“I’m truly sorry for being selfish. Once I’ve seen various things, I will tell you how the humans been, Helen, okay? Perchance I might discover a great breakthrough to change the village.” (Reni)

“Speaking of village, it’s your village, where the sheep and rabbits are gathered, huh...?” (Hifumi)

While tapping his knee with a fingertip, Hifumi was apparently struck by some idea. He organizes it in his head.

“It won’t be strange to encounter something that might change your village, too.” (Hifumi)

Looking at Hifumi broadly grinning, Helen stood up in a fluster.

“I-I will come along as well!” (Helen)

Acknowledging Helen’s request as well, the three changed their plans and it became a situation of them heading towards Swordland without parting from each other.



The name of the current king of the Knight Country, Swordland, was Buell.

He, who is a muscular knight you can even call an exact resemblance of the founding king, devotes himself to training immediately after dealing with the governmental affairs. He is referred as being stronger than any of the knights within the country.

“A Knight, who left to hunt beastmen, hasn’t returned, you say?” (Buell)

Shaking his short-cut blonde hair while practising sword swings in the back yard of the castle, he questioned the report with 「The reason is

unknown?」

“Haa! Going by the records of entry and departure, it is believed that he hasn't gone too far into the wastelands, but at present it is under investigation.”

“Ignore it.” (Buell)

“Ha?”

Putting down his sword, Buell wiped of the flowing sweat.

“I told you to ignore it. If that person is a knight, who embraces our country's pride, it will be fine to receive him at that time, since he will likely return even if he hunts for several days. However, if it looks like he had been done in by the likes of beastmen, this knight won't be needed in this country.” (Buell)

“However...”

Without being tolerated to object, the knight, who came to report, was driven away with a mere gesture of the king.

In exchange it was a single chamberlain, who is constantly following the king, that stepped forward close to the king.

The chamberlain accepted the cloth, which the king used to wipe off his sweat, and took out cooled water.

“A beastman can be arranged.”

“If that's the case, bring it here right away.” (Buell)

“As you wish.”

At the time the chamberlain, who left that place with a bow, returned, there were two soldiers, dragging a leopard beastman, having its hands and feet bound by chains, in his back.

“Hmm. Today the opponent is a leopard, eh?” (Buell)

Grasping the sword, Buell, who stood in front of the leopard beastman, points his sword at it and says,

“Though being a filthy beastman, are you strong?” (Buell)

The leopard beastman, lifting its head, glares at the king in silence.

“My king. Since this thing was persistently shouting, we have crushed and burned its throat. It won’t be able to raise its voice.”

“What, is that so? Oy, beastman. I will have the chains binding you removed now. And, if you are able to cause even a single scratch on me, I will release you in the wastelands.” (Buell)

With the instruction of the king, the soldiers unfastened the clasps and quickly got away from the beastman.

The beastman, who was suddenly liberated from the restraints, looked below his knee for no more than an instant, nimbly leapt back and set up its bare claws.

The king daringly laughs at the leopard beastman, who put more attention into glaring.

“That’s right. It’s good to also do that in order to desperately cling to life like that. But.” (Buell)

He takes a peculiar stance of pushing out the sword, which he held with both hands, diagonally above.

“After all you are a beastman. Consider it a honour to die by a knight’s sword technique.” (Buell)

Soundlessly raising a roar, the leopard approaches fiercely.

The leopard beastman, who slipped underfoot by making sure to crawl on the ground, aimed at the king’s neck as it stuck out both arms while at the same time raising its body.

“Naive.” (Buell)

Drawing the sword, he knocks down the fingers sticking out by wielding the hilt and sweeps the blade sideways savagely.

The moment the leopard beastman judged that its narrow evasion was successful by lowering its body once again, the king twists his body and swings the sword once more by rotating as if a spinning top.

“Humph!” (Buell)

With a sound closer to slapping into something rather than slicing something, the leopard’s head was split open into top and bottom.

Without giving an eye to the leopard beastman, who collapsed and scattered brain matter, the king thrusts out the sword towards the chamberlain for them to wipe the blade.

“It’s first movement was great, but I was able to deal with it in an instant.” (Buell)

“It was magnificent, my king.”

The king expressed his displeasure by snorting due to the chamberlain’s compliment.

“If I have a hard time with a fellow of this level, I can’t be called the Knight Country’s king. I ought to be as strong as the founder. Go search a stronger beastman at once and bring it here.” (Buell)

“Ha! At your command.”

The soldiers, who brought the beastman, bow to the king and leave while dragging the corpse along.

“My king. It’s time to slowly return to the castle.”

Hearing the words of the chamberlain, the king shook his head.

“I will leave it to someone. I’m off to the female’s* room. It’s welling up after a fight after all.” (Buell) (T/N: mesu = female animal)

“Certainly!”

The king, who heads towards the room, where the beastwomen are confined, in the castle’s basement, was seen off by the bowing chamberlains.

Chapter 89: Trust?

What Reni and Helen snugly put on their heads were the hoods, attached to the mantles, which were used many times by Origa and Kasha to avoid the eyes of guards. Given that he had thrown those into the darkness storage, he passed those to the troublesome two, who would also make a racket in the surroundings, and had them wear those.

“Well then, next.”

Currently, for the sake of entering the gate into Swordland, where Hifumi’s group has arrived at, they have slipped among the people lining up to enter there.

On top of being an independent nation, which faced the wastelands, the chattering was cut off within the protective walls. Hifumi wondered whether it was a city with little traffic, but there are places for hunting and farming other than the city. Apparently the number of common people coming and going isn’t usually this small.

Be that as it may, if you compare it to Fokalore, which has had a tremendous increase in population, it’s insignificant. With it mostly being people entering and leaving everyday, the probability of them being acquaintances of the guards doing the inspections seems to be extremely high. There’s only few people showing something like identification papers.

“Next... you? You may pass.”

“Yes. Thanks as always.”

Due to them saying such, the queue is rapidly shrinking.

“Next is... a face I haven’t seen yet. Also, your two companions, remove your headgear and show your faces.”

As he was told by the soldier, Hifumi quickly pulled down the hoods of the hesitating Reni and Helen.

“This..., beastmen!?”

“Don’t get flustered. My slaves are no danger. There’s likely something else you have to do rather than being surprised.” (Hifumi)

“Ah, u-understood.”

Being told that high-handedly, the soldier reflexively confirms the name in a businesslike manner and records it down. Thereupon, apparently realizing what he has been doing, the soldier’s face became bright red and he continued to question Hifumi.

“As there doesn’t seem to be a record of you leaving this city, where did you come from? What’s your objective?”

“It’s because I’m from Orsongrande, on the other side of the wastelands. My objective is to merely go on a pleasure trip.” (Hifumi)

“You say, you came out of the wastelands? Didn’t you get caught by beastmen over there!? You are amazingly talented or had great luck.”

Due to the soldier looking at them with a scrutinizing look, Reni cast down her eyes and Helen clenched her fists, but they endured it without leaking a single word.

Seeing their state, Hifumi decided to have a slight better opinion of those two.

“They are my assets. Don’t stare at them too much. So, is it already fine to pass as well?” (Hifumi)

“Ah, sorry. Carry this permit. The admission tax is 5 silver coins, but... do you have those?”

On the desk the soldier, who was facing him with a doubtful look, has been placing his elbow, Hifumi casually piled up around 10 gold cons.

The design of the gold coins is different from the one in Swordland, but their size is one size larger. Even the portrait, which had been thoroughly engraved into it, is detailed and beautiful.

Hifumi sighed with a “Good grief”, as the soldier had his breath taken away and was unable to take his eyes off the gold coins.

“It’s the money of the country over there, but money is money. Because I don’t need any attraction, hurry up and let us through.” (Hifumi)



The bearman Salgu returned to their nesting place within the woods being accompanied by the tigerboy’s group.

It was the first time the boy’s group learned of it, but bear beastmen don’t form packs. Apparently they are basically living by themselves or, at most, with their families.

Although there is mingling with their fellow members of the same race, they are told that it almost never happens for them to live together.

“Accordingly, the bear beastmen cherish their family ties. If a child loses its parents prematurely due to something happening, the other adults will look after it and raise it as well.” (Salgu)

Tearing off a fruit, that was growing at a high place, Salgu equally split it with Olra, who is his daughter, and the boy and his younger sister.

“T-Thank you...”

“Let’s hear your name. You are the lifesaver of my precious daughter after all.” (Salgu)

“Something like benefactor... I’m Malfas (T/N: Marufasu <<) and my younger sister is Riedel (T/N: Ri~deru <<).” (Malfas)

Once her elder brother gave her name, the younger sister quickly, in a bouncing way, bowed her head.

Salgu smiled gently and placed his paw on the head of Malfas.

“Malfas, there’s no necessity to force yourself to talk politely.” (Salgu)

“But, you saved us, although we are even from a different race...”
(Malfas)

“Let me see. Malfas did the same as well. In order to save my daughter, albeit her being of a different race, you put your life at risk and raised your voice.” (Salgu)

“We are of equal status in this regard”, Salgu’s large paw stroke Malfas’ head roughing his hair up.

“Please eat without restraint. Since there are recently few beastman living in this area due to being cautious of humans, lots of fish and fruits can be gathered.” (Salgu)

Presenting a fish while smiling broadly, Salgu himself made short work of the fish, who is more than 50 centimetres long, with his large jaw.

“Are there this many humans coming?” (Riedel)

When Riedel asked while chewing on the fruit, Salgu shook his head.

“I’m sorry to say. Even just yesterday, it looks like they caught a leopard

beastman, who lived nearby.” (Salgu)

Since he didn't see his figure since morning, he visited the nesting place of a leopard beastman acquaintance and discovered traces of blood close-by, he says.

“He was quite the strong fellow, but against human opponents, who surround one with large numbers holding weapons, it's a harsh situation after all...” (Salgu)

“However, didn't you win against human opponents, Salgu-san!?”
(Malfas)

As Malfas shouts, Salgu laughs.

“That's right. I believe myself to be quite strong. But you know, likewise it's a miracle because the large number of people. No matter how big a beastman might be, they will be defeated, if they get swarmed by large quantities of poisonous insects.” (Salgu)

“You will likely understand once you saw a guy, who was attacked by bees and ants”, being told that, Malfas and Riedel cast their eyes down with pale faces.

“Papa, don't talk about such things during lunch. Look, haven't the two of them lost their appetite because of this?” (Olra)

“Ah, sorry for that.” (Salgu)

Due to the appearance of the huge bearman being scolded by his daughter, Malfas just ended up laughing.

“E-Excuse me.” (Malfas)

“No, it's always better to laugh like that. Especially a man has to show laughter at a time, he has no leeway.” (Salgu)

“What kind of self-important thing are you saying?” (Olra)

Proceeding with the meal in this gentle mood, Riedel was taken by Olra and fell asleep.

Lighting a fire, the man and the boy quietly talked with each other while watching the fire burst open with crackling sounds.

“As a matter of fact, there’s something I want to request of you.” (Salgu)

Choosing a place, where their talking voice couldn’t be heard by Olra’s group, whose bed was slightly further away, Salgu quietly said,

“Request?” (Malfas)

“Yes, I want you guys to go even further into the centre of the wastelands together with Olra. Leaving the area, where there are humans and dangerous beastmen, to a place of harmless folks like rabbit beastmen or something like that.” (Salgu)

“What will you do, Salgu-san?” (Malfas)

“I will go to the human country.” (Salgu)

Malfas gasped due to Salgu’s immediate reply.

“I know since I’ve been living in this area for a long time. The abnormality, which doesn’t abate, of beastmen being taken along. It seems those humans turn the beastmen into slaves. Since I saw beastmen, who were tied together, many times, there’s likely no doubt about that.” (Salgu)

“However, aren’t too many beastmen being kidnapped?” is the question that pestered Salgu since some time.

“Resolving myself, I went and hid myself to see the area, where the humans are.” (Salgu)

For the interval of a person’s breath, the words of Salgu, who talks with seriousness in his eyes, cease.

Malfas gulped.

“Close to the fields made by the humans, the corpses of beastmen were thrown away in a pile. It was a large quantity, to the extent of forming a small mountain. That’s not a graveyard or anything like that. They have been literally thrown away.” (Salgu)

Within Salgu’s eyes flames of rage are burning.

“Each and every of the corpses were new. There were also corpses of rabbits, sheep, tigers and bears. ... Many of them had their fur torn off as well.” (Salgu)

“Such a...” (Malfas)

“Although one might say it’s other beastmen, I wouldn’t be able to endure it, if I saw them suffering such a fate. Before long I have been considering to free as many beastmen as possible by going to the human country. Therefore...” (Salgu)

“That’s too rash! If you went to such a place filled with great numbers of humans, you will be killed!” (Malfas)

“Calm down, you will wake up the girls.” (Salgu)

Malfas restrained his voice quickly, but even so continues to stop Salgu with a small voice, but Salgu ends up warding it off by laughter.

“I thought she is a child, but you saw that my daughter also has already reached the point of being at least able to harvest things to eat by herself. Though she experienced something dangerous by chance today, she likely won’t encounter dangerous looks to that extent, if it’s in the central part of the wastelands.” (Salgu)

“My daughter, despite looking like that, her strength is fairly powerful”, Salgu laughed.

“Malfas. You are a kind tigerman, therefore, won't you go together with her, if it's fine with you? It looks like she gets along with your younger sister-san as well. ... Even other beastmen, if she reaches the point of being able to talk together with them without minding their races, it will be fine.” (Salgu)

“By some chance, if it's the beastmen I freed myself, she might get along with them”, Salgu muttered.

“It's an unbelievable story similar to a dream, but if you like, I want you cooperate with me”, Salgu bowed.

“I will go with you as well.” (Malfas)

“That's not allowed. There are still some things you should do since you are young, Malfas. Finding a girl and making children. Become a father and protect your children... you can't become like me.” (Salgu)

That was the first time Malfas saw the tears of an adult.

Even such powerful person has a time when they cry? is what he was dumbfounded about for a short while, but Malfas decided to accept Salgu's request.

“... Understood. But I have two requests.” (Malfas)

“Got it. Let's hear them.” (Salgu)

The open fire made a small sound. The ashes, fluttering in the air, drop under the feet of Malfas.

“Please explain your reason to Olra, Salgu-san. Without lies and deceptions, just the truth of the matter.” (Malfas)

“That is...” (Salgu)

“My parents were killed by a human without me noticing. Before I realized anything, we had lost our parents. Probably, even if we had been at that place, our parents would have been killed. Besides, there were a lot of adults there as well, but none of them survived.” (Malfas)

He looks directly at Salgu.

“Your parents dying, before you realized it, is painful. Please, at least, have her brace for it. And, in order to transform her worries into pointless anxiety, please come back without fail. Until then we will go to a place, which is slightly away, but we will wait there for you.” (Malfas)

Looking into each other’s eyes, they sense each other’s intention.

Salgu laughed with a “Pfft” and tossed a twig into the open fire.

“I give up. it appears that you have been an adult all along, Malfas. Understood. I will tell my daughter tomorrow. And I will promise her to survive and come back without fail.” (Salgu)

“Therefore”, Salgu bowed once more.

“I leave my daughter to you.” (Salgu)



What Reni and Helen saw after passing through the gate was the main road of the city with many people going back and forth.

The road, which continues from the entrance of the city straight to the castle, has various kinds of shops lined up left and right of the broad path.

“Uwaa...”

“... Uwaa.”

Both of them raised their voices similarly, but Reni was deeply moved by the state of the city with its imposing buildings and goods. For Helen it was words just leaving her mouth remembering he sense of discomfort due to there being a large number of humans.

“Don’t stand still. Hurry up and move.”

The two chase after Hifumi, who began to walk, in a panic. They lined up at both his sides.

“Where do we go?”

“We don’t have any money of this country. We will make money by selling my own property.” (Hifumi)

“Money, is it? Humans exchange items for money, right?”

“What a strange story, right? To exchange something you can’t eat with items that aren’t even clothes. Isn’t that a loss?”

Hifumi, abandoning the beastgirls, who begin to chat severally, walks quickly.

Given that Hifumi’s appearance was still, as ever, a dark blue dougi and a black hakama, the city’s people look at him with strange eyes, but even above that, their looks gather on the beastmen, he leads.

Beastmen slaves aren’t unusual, but walking without them having chains pinning them down as burden and moreover, because of their good complexion, the people are apparently considering him to raise them by expending money.

“... There are plenty of beastmen.”

“All of them are bound by chains. There are many with injuries as well, but...”

Helen had gradually lost her will to look at the vicinity.

Being yelled at by a middle-aged man, a dogboy is beaten. A bearman, who is paraded about as guard tool of a noble. Stuffed into a cage, a rabbitwoman, with a price tag attached, was exposed as if it's some exhibition.

While watching those, a feeling of being unable to bear it formed in Helen. If she makes a single mistake, she will end up like that as well.

“Reni, let's go home after all.” (Helen)

“That's no good.” (Reni)

Reni said while properly looking at her surroundings.

“Helen. I believe humans are amazing after all. Beastmen might be certainly above humans in such things as strength or running speed, but... they are building this many houses and are taking, creating, eating so many various things.” (Reni)

Reni looked at Helen.

To Helen, her face, which appeared to be that of someone else somehow, was shaking with tension and astonishment.

“Disgusting things can be seen as well, but if you observe it properly, there will be things we can do. If the humans increased rapidly, we would have no place to run someday.” (Reni)

“Reni...” (Helen)

As Helen talks with a look similar to running away from Reni, her eyes met the rabbit beastman, who's the same as her, in the cage.

In the hollow, widely-opened eyes there isn't any trace of any kind of emotions.

She thinks it might have still been better if she had raised her voice with a "Help!", Helen felt sick at heart.

"Something, something we can do... and then we can save them, I hope."

"I don't understand."

Reni says.

"But, you want to believe that the things possible to do won't increase, right?"

While listening to such conversation, Hifumi revised his own plan within his head. Reviewing the adjusted, fixed plan, he turned his look at the two beastmen so that they wouldn't notice and laughed quietly.

After walking for around 15 minutes, Hifumi entered the second-hand shop, he heard about from the guard.

"Please buy this."

As soon as he enters the shop, he heads for the place of shopkeeper-like old man, sitting at the counter, in a straight line and places down a magic tool, he took out.

The shopkeeper was taken aback for a moment, however with that being something he got used to, he holds the tool wondering whether it's the boy of a noble, who was troubled by money, from somewhere.

“What’s this? It looks like a magic tool, but...”

“It’s lighting. Look.” (Hifumi)

Once Hifumi held out his hand over a part of the magic tool, it began to give off a faint light.

“T-That’s surprising! I won’t get my hands on something like a light magic tool quickly! Hey, where did you get such thing?”

“Omit the yapping and buy it. Will you take others?” (Hifumi)

“U-Understood.”

The shopkeeper, bringing a bag from the shop’s back, piled up gold coins on the counter.

“How about 10 gold coins?”

“How long will I be able to stay in an inn of the city with this?” (Hifumi)

Due to Hifumi’s question, the shopkeeper wondered why such thing?, but it will likewise be troublesome, if he gets and angry and takes it to someone else. In Swordland, that has almost no exchange with foreign countries, magic tools are high-class items, even if they are second-hand.

“The market price around here is 5 silver coins for staying overnight without meals. For a high-class inn, close to the castle, it will take 20 silver coins.”

“Expensive.” (Hifumi)

“You will be able to stay 50 nights in a simple inn.”

“I guess that’s fine.” (Hifumi)

Hifumi seizes the gold coins on top of the counter and, pretending to stuff it into his wallet, he stores them away in his darkness storage.

“So, where are those expensive lodgings?” (Hifumi)

Chapter 90: Not A Bad Thing

“Peace is scary.” (Sabnak)

“Dear, what are you saying?” (Shibyura)

While placing black tea on Sabnak’s desk, Shibyura says in a fed up voice.

“How many days passed since Hifumi-san left the capital? Doesn’t it seem like he entered the wastelands, as far as I’ve heard? Though it’s great to not have to worry about troubles, if I think about that person not being in this country, I become uneasy wondering what he’s doing outside the country.” (Sabnak)

Sabnak has a distant look while tasting the black tea.

“Rather than such things, gather the documents. Please hurry up and check them. If you don’t finish before Vaiya-san returns from his honeymoon, won’t it result in a change of captain?” (Shibyura)

“... Why is Vaiya able to take a holiday before me, I wonder?” (Sabnak)

“It’s because you were too slow with your marriage proposal, dear.” (Shibyura)

Sabnak, who gave up to dismiss it resolutely, reluctantly cast his sight on the documents.

Him being able to win against Shibyura in an argument has never happened.

“Besides, get a grip and please have self-awareness as Royal Knight Commander. Please abstain from hitting the city’s bars after eating at the knight’s dining hall.” (Shibyura)

“P-Please wait! I have to stay in touch with my comrades and the mingling with the townspeople is an important duty...” (Sabnak)

“If you properly interact with the other nobles, I won’t have to talk about such things though. At least participate a tea party or banquet once every 5 days, please. If it goes on as it is now, it will become difficult for our children to enter the noble’s society.” (Shibyura)

“But, you know”, Sabnak faltered, but Shibyura glared at him sternly.

“Dear, you probably want to experience freedom similar to Earl Tohno, but if you want to do so, please show achievements and a level of ability, which can’t be called ambiguous by your surroundings.” (Shibyura)

Piling up the documents in front of him, Sabnak grumbled.

“Although you are behaving like you have spare-time and are nonchalantly drinking black tea, don’t you have to straighten up these documents throughout the morning since it is scheduled for you to act as Her Majesty’s, the Queen’s, attendant in the afternoon? Please get it done quickly without dreaming around because no one but you is able to put your signature on them.” (Shibyura)

“Haa... understood.” (Sabnak)

Sighing while running his pen across the documents in a fluent motion, Sabnak thoughts got lost in Hifumi’s situation once again.

(Be it the wastelands or even Swordland, that person likely won’t receive an injury. Even picking a fight with that person and losing one’s life due to that can be simply called reaping what you sow. That’s all there is to it.) (Sabnak) Tossing a document into the “Processed” tray, he grabs the next document.

(The problem is the case, where people, who choose to “accompany” that person, appear. If their situation resembled Midas-san and me, they would have a hard time by getting dragged into things, even if they stayed

at distance. If they chose something like fighting besides him, then...)
(Sabnak) Origa's face surfaces within Sabnak's mind.

It would be a disaster, if the number of such children increased, while shivering, he wrote down his signature on the document.



Hifumi, who got his hands on gold coins of Swordland, walked along the road while irresponsibly spending his money on sweets at the stalls lining up along the way.

Buying suitable foodstuff, they took fancy in, as gift for Reni and Helen, the three side-by-side aim towards the inn while eating pieces of fruits, bread and grilled fish and meat skewers.

“Say, humans like to tamper with various kinds of food, right?” (Helen)

While watching the steam rising from the meat stuck on the skewer, Helen spoke as if being astonished and interested.

“It's amazing, right!? I wonder how they create such things. It's delicious and fluffy!” (Reni)

Reni, who is eating steamed buns by carefully tearing it off bit by bit, seems to enjoy the sensation at the moment of ripping it off.

“Tasty food will cheer you up. Besides, humans are fickle. They aren't able to stand eating the same thing all the time.” (Hifumi)

“Certainly, if there were such various, delicious things, I might get fed up with just the same fruit the whole time too.”

Chewing the meat on the skewer thoroughly, Helen's face reflexively breaks into a broad smile due to the meat juices spreading and seeping in.

After Reni looked as if regretting the last bite of her steamed bun, she was able to toss it into her mouth with a “There you go!”

“It’s this place.” (Hifumi)

The building, they arrived at, is an imposing 4-storey building with a firm double door as entrance.

The white wall seems to have been washed clean. By its appearance it had a feel of cleanliness although its old age is visible.

Without any intention the beastgirls look up at the large building in blank amazement. Hifumi quickly opened the door and stepped inside.

“Welcome.”

A skinny man in white shirt and slacks bowed towards Hifumi.

It’s a 45° bow as if it had accurately been measured. Lifting his face, he shows a smile.

“Are you staying over?”

“Yes, there’s three of us. One single room and a double room.” (Hifumi)

“Certainly! The registry is this way...”

Seeing the two beastmen entering the inn a little after Hifumi, the man stopped his words and his smile froze.

“Say... the beastmen over there belong to...?”

“They get the double room. The single room is for me.” (Hifumi)

“T-That can’t be right, can it? I’ve never heard of beastmen staying at an inn before...”

“Humph”, Hifumi looked at the man disinterestedly.

“As there were fellows leading beastmen slaves around in the city as well, what do they do at the time of using an inn?” (Hifumi)

“Normally the slaves are told to get into the storage or stable in the back...”

Once Hifumi turned around Helen’s cheek was puffed up due to be told something like staying together with the horses and Reni didn’t seem to understand the meaning of storage.

“Understood.” (Hifumi)

The man, who took a breath out of relief due to Hifumi’s words, regained his smile and tried to hand a pen to Hifumi but before he could do that, Hifumi stacked up gold coins on the counter.

“Give those two the most expensive room of this inn. And the one next door to me.” (Hifumi)

Hifumi, who took the pen from the man, whose mouth twitched as if cramping while keeping up the smile, returned the pen after going as far as even properly writing the title “Earl of Orsongrande” in the registry.

“What’s wrong? Hurry up and guide us to our rooms. It’s a high-class inn, right?” (Hifumi)

Opening his eyes widely only for an instant due to the word “Earl” written by Hifumi, the man dropped his shoulders as if he had given up and guided them to their rooms saying 「Please follow me this way」 with a

feeble voice.

“As meal we will have the most expensive course in the dining room. Three shares, of course.” (Hifumi)

The man had an expression as if close to crying due to Hifumi adding one thing after the other. Hifumi laughed while smiling broadly.



Not approaching the main gate, Salgu went around in a circle and drew near to a spot of the wall.

“If I remember correctly, it should be around here...” (Salgu)

Once he checks the surroundings of the wall for a short while, he discovered a partly crumbled part. Salgu found that part previously by coincidence. It may be because it is difficult to spot as it is hidden by tall weeds. Although there's a hole to the degree that Salgu can pass through it, the place has been neglected for quite some time.

After confirming that no one is visible in the vicinity for some time, Salgu goes through the narrow hole using his utmost effort for his large body.

Advancing through the interior of the thick wall, the place, he turned up, being smeared in soil and stones, was a section, obviously abandoned, with decaying houses lining up.

Escaping from the hole, he conceals himself in the shadow of a collapsed house while warily surveying his surroundings.

“What the hell is this place...?” (Salgu)

Of course Salgu, for whom it also was the first time to enter a human

city only after he left the hole, isn't familiar with the locality at all. Pricking up his ears quietly, he hears faint talking voices of people drifting his way.

Walking while making sure to not make any sounds as much as possible, he secretly peers out from his cover in order to see the voices' owners.

There he saw a group circle of scattered races like sheep and dogs conversing.

“That is cruel...” (Salgu)

Among the beastmen continuing to hold pieces of silly conversations while facing each other gloomily, there wasn't a single person having no injuries.

Those without a leg or arm, those with only one eye, those, whose spine ended up crooked and twisted, and similar are sitting in a circle with filthy clothes twined around their bodies.

Salgu, who confirmed that there wasn't any human among them, resolved himself to appear in front of them.

“There's a little something I want to talk about.” (Salgu)

“Yea? What is it? It's a face I don't know...”

“I came from the wastelands. The other side of the wall has a hole. I entered from there.” (Salgu)

Looking at the direction Salgu points at, the dog beastman, who answered him, laughs scornfully.

“Hah, you expressly entered through that broken place? You went through troubles.”

“Bear-niisan, what kind of business do you have in this garbage dump of a slum?”

The old sheep woman’s face contorts into a twisted smile.

“No... Why are all of you remaining here although there’s a hole from where you can leave over there? You should be able to go back to the wastelands.” (Salgu)

Upon Salgu’s question the beastmen of the slum exchanged glances and suddenly broke into laughter.

“If there only were optimistic guys like you here, the slums would likely be a little more peaceful as well.”

“What?”

Due to Salgu moving his ears with a twitch upon the dog beastman’s statement, the dog beastman laughs and tells him “Don’t get angry”.

“Try looking at our appearances. If we left towards the wasteland in such state, we would only starve due to being unable to even hunt. On the contrary, it will result in us dying while being persecuted by other beastmen.”

“If we stay in the city, there will also be the leftovers of the humans. If it’s only about staying alive, this side is comfortable.”

The aged sheep beastwoman, who laughs with a giggle, showed her chipped teeth.

“What a...” (Salgu)

Salgu, who was here with the plan to rescue the beastmen, who have been caught, ended up lacking the words due to the not-foreseen reality, which was thrust at him all of a sudden.

“Did you possibly enter here planning something like saving the beastmen, who were caught by humans?”

“Why do you think so?” (Salgu)

“Occasionally there are those. Fellows, who dash ahead with such sense of justice.”

“That’s right, and they quickly pass away after a counter-attack by the humans. Since even the beastmen, who have something to do with it, are disposed of for being involved in it, it’s extremely annoying.”

“That’s how it is.”

While skilfully keeping balance with one arm, the dog beastman got up and stood in front of Salgu.

The difference in height, far from being one head, is more than 1 m, but the dog beastman’s eyes are easily capturing all of Salgu.

“It’s your own business if you want to struggle against human opponents, but please do it elsewhere. I will tell you clearly, people like you are the most annoying ones.”

Salgu wasn’t able to object.



“Why are we in a different room?”

“I can’t sleep if I’m not by myself. There’s no meaning in staying in the same room either, I think.” (Hifumi)

Once he said so, Hifumi threw the beastgirls into their room and quickly entered his own room next door. Closing the door, the sound of the lock could be heard as well.

“Come on, what’s with him?” (Helen)

“Helen, look, look!” (Reni)

As Helen, who is getting angry in a huff, took a sidelong glance, Reni was rolling around all over the soft bed.

“That feels great~. Humans are sleeping in such beds.” (Reni)

Reni is stuffing her face in the pillow with a limp expression.

Even Helen, seeing that, leaped onto the bed unable to endure.

“It’s really soft.” (Helen)

Before entering the room, Reni and Helen washed their bodies in a mildly hot bath and changed into the brand new one-pieces, which were prepared by the the inn’s employee and which is the same attire Hifumi is wearing as well.

For the first time they did such things like washing in a hot bath and neatly combing their hair. Helen, who crawled into the futon with a heated-up body, loosened her tension of being in a human city and began to doze off.

“Helen, it’s no good to go sleep. Soon it will be time to eat. Hifumi-san said so, didn’t he?” (Reni)

“Uh~” (Helen)

Although thinking I never expected that the time for Reni to caution me will come, she can’t resist the charm of the futon.

“Ei!” (Reni)

“Kyaa!?” (Helen)

Abruptly tearing off the bed cover, Helen instinctively shrunk down into a ball holding her knees.

“Hey, let’s go to Hifumi-san’s room.” (Reni)

“I got it. Jeez, what’s with your unusual behaviour?” (Helen)

“I have become somewhat excited. I’m also looking forward to the humans’ food.” (Reni)

Watching Reni, who leaves the room ahead with a nimble stride, Helen shrugged her shoulders.

Although they are childhood friends, who were together from the time they were born, it’s the first time she sees her state being so delightful. She displayed different behaviours and expressions than in the period, they have passed being scared of sounds in the woods of the wastelands.

“Really now, although I’ve even told you that this is a human city...”
(Helen)

Even while saying so, Helen was aware that she was enjoying the situation herself as well.

“Human cooking, eh? The stall’s ? meat was delicious. The fish was delicious as well.” (Helen)

Helen, whose face turned bright red due to the sound coming from her stomach, chased after Reni.

At the time she entered the hallway, Hifumi had already entered it, too.

When the three showed up at the dining room together, an employee approached in a flustered state.

“Since it’s possible to carry the meal to your rooms, you will be able to slowly and comfortably...”

“No, I don’t want the smell of food to stick around in the room. Here’s fine. As I want to eat various things, serve us appropriately large portions of different kinds at your own discretion.” (Hifumi)

Hifumi slipped a gold coin into the employee’s hand while saying that it’s additional to the meal expenses.

The employee, being surprised by seeing a glittering coin within his hands, laughed foolishly and lead them to a table.

“It’s no particular problem for us to eat in the room though...” (Helen)

“I wonder what kind of food it will be? I’m looking forward to it, Helen.” (Reni)

Helen’s whispered opinion was drowned out by Reni’s voice.

“Well, whatever”, Helen gives up and decides to obediently wait for the meal.

Although the looks of the other customers, being at the dining room, gather on them, Helen and Reni, who were showered with gazes all over the town during the day, don’t particularly mind it either.

Hifumi has a character to not care about other people's looks "if there's no killing intent and hostility" emanating from them.

"The food from stalls is nice as well, but at such place they also pay attention to the appearance of colouring and arrangement of the things to eat." (Hifumi)

"Why? Isn't it fine, if it's tasty?"

"Humans also enjoy such "pointless things.""

"Is that so...?"

Helen is repeatedly puzzled and Reni feels admiration.

Then the waiter came carrying the first dish.

"Waah..."

Steam is rising from the served dish. It was steamed chicken meat.

Once Hifumi briefly explains the way to use fork and knife, the two, feeling irritated, break the meat into small pieces with their hands and stuff it into their mouths.

"There's is such tender meat as well."

"It's the cooking which makes it tender. There's no way it will become like this, even if you roast it as it is." (Hifumi)

While Hifumi also fills his mouth with one piece of meat after the other, he gives a proper explanation.

Due to the appearance of a human and beastmen peacefully eating their meal, the surrounding customers also gradually lost interest.

There was even a customer, who wanted to complain about manner and smell at the time when they came entering in the beginning, but seeing the two, who have a neat appearance having taken a bath, eating the food with delight, it apparently became difficult for them to raise their voice.

There are even some among the female customers, who feel that it is a pleasant scene. They are watching the smiling faces of the beastgirls, who are able to eat the dishes, which are brought one after the other, with sparkling eyes.

Once Reni, who noticed the state of such surrounding, showed a bewildered look, Hifumi stopped his hands.

“Did you realize?” (Hifumi)

“Ah, yes.” (Reni)

“This is the sole pleasant aspect of humans. Their treatment will change with the circumstances, even if the target is the same.” (Hifumi)

Hifumi stabbed the meat with his fork.

“Even killing targets and targets of admiration are the same. I, myself, don’t believe it to be strange at all. It’s a simplicity that appears to be complicated.” (Hifumi)

“That’s somehow incomprehensible. What do you want to say?” (Helen)

Helen pouts and shakes her ears.

“If you consider it fun to watch such “humans”, I wonder whether you want to do interesting stuff together with me from now on.” (Hifumi)

“Interesting stuff?” (Reni)

While biting in a crisp, long and narrow vegetable, similar to cucumber, which was put into the salad, Reni showed great curiosity.

“Yea, it will be interesting. In the country, I come from, it’s a very popular game.” (Hifumi)

Hearing of a game, Helen apparently got curious as well.

“The game is?” (Helen)

“Ah, it’s an enjoyable game. It’s name is Take the nation.” (Hifumi)
(T/N: There is actually really a game called like that 国盗り ... Kuni tori.
Feel free to google it)

Chapter 91: Smile

Having an amount of gold coins, he hadn't seen yet, being piled up in front of his eyes with a jingling sound, Swordland's slave trader was stumped.

The person, who produced that mountain of gold, was a man, who had a hood pulled over his entire face, wore a mantle and strange clothes from the beginning. Only the mouth can be seen. Going by the pitch of the laughter, which causes the corners of his mouth to lift as if a crescent moon, he's likely a still young man, the slave trader judged.

There's a petite pair lining up in the back of the man, but although these two are also wearing hoods, they seem to be beastmen going by what can be seen. They are probably the man's slaves.

“What's up? Didn't you hear my order?”

“P-Please wait! Even if you tell me that you are going to buy all of this shop's beastmen...”

“What is it? Isn't it enough money?”

“That's not what I mean...”

Where did he take those out from? The person adding even more gold coins is of course Hifumi.

“If that's the case, what do you mean?” (Hifumi)

“Although they might be called slaves, there are various ones. I will also

be troubled by getting complaints afterwards, if you don't choose them properly. There are even those, you can't use for manual labour due them being sold as disposable waste by the castle due to their wounds..."

"I don't care." (Hifumi)

"Hah?"

"I don't give a damn whether they have injuries or other problems. Hurry up and get them ready since I will buy the entire bunch." (Hifumi)

Due to the far too pushy way of talking, the slave trader brought out more than 30 slaves from within the store while grumbling 「Don't come complaining to me afterwards」.

All of those, who were brought out, were standing with an absent-minded facial expression having their hands and feet bound with chains.

As the slave dealer had said, there are some, missing legs and arms, mixed in-between and there are also those, who are showing an exhausted state to the degree of barely walking being supported by other slaves.

"These are all I have."

"Fine, fine. Well then, everyone follow me." (Hifumi)

Hifumi, who tries to hurry up and go outside having finished his business, was stopped by the slave trader in panic.

"No, if you aren't registered in the slave tattoo..."

"Ah, that, huh?" (Hifumi)

Hifumi recalled the situation at the time he purchased Origa and Kasha.

He admired magic being something mysterious at that time, however having gotten used to life over here, he bitterly smiles to himself due to the fact of having completely accepted the existence of magic.

“There’s no particular need for that.” (Hifumi)

“B-But, customer, if you don’t register in the slave crest, you won’t be able to stop the slaves opposing you.”

“There are many precedents of owners being killed by their slaves as well”, the slave trader says while getting worked up, but Hifumi, stopping him with his right hand, has a nonchalant air.

“It will be very welcome, if they come assassinating me while I’m asleep or launch a surprise attack. If there isn’t at least this much tension, there won’t be an actual feeling of being alive either. If I get killed by these guys, that will only mean that this was my limit.” (Hifumi)

Hifumi, who turned around to the dumbfounded beastmen, checked the faces of all of them.

“You heard it. If you are up to it, it will be fine for you to aim at my life any time. But...” (Hifumi)

Hifumi draws the katana and mutters, while ecstatically gazing at the beautiful hamon,

“I will kill you, if you attack me with a half-hearted resolution. I will kill you, if you do it with a naive plan. I will kill you, if you do it half-assedly.” (Hifumi)

The light being reflected by the blade appeared to shine on Hifumi’s left eye.

“In short, you will die, if you fail. Do remember only that.” (Hifumi)

Everyone gulped and nodded weakly.

“Alright. Let’s go then?” (Hifumi)

“Thank you very much.”

At the end of the line of slaves leaving the slave trader’s shop to follow Hifumi, Reni, who waited silently, smiled at the slave trader.

“A-Ah...”

“Let’s go, Reni”

Leaving behind the bewildered slave trader, for whom it was the first time to have a beastman’s smile turned upon him, Reni left the store with Helen leading her by the hand.



The place, the slaves were brought to, was the high-class inn lodging Hifumi’s group.

Without showing absolutely any manner of restraint or such, the beastmen are brought along and step into the building. Even the employees’ forced smiles were unreasonable by now.

“J-Just a second, guest-sama!”

“That’s right, they are guest-sama’s. Please prepare rooms for these guys. Also hot baths in order to wash their bodies. Since we will naturally

go to the dining room to eat our meals, prepare plenty of food just like yesterday, please.” (Hifumi)

Hifumi, who handed over a large amount of money saying “It’s the inn fee”, passed further money to a single employee and told them to go buy a plenty amount of clothes and footwear for the slaves.

“Although I don’t have to tell you, but treat them properly. They are guests, who properly paid the money. And, you guys as well.” (Hifumi)

He turns his look towards the beastmen, he brought along.

Are they scared of Hifumi? Without matching his look, they cast their eyes down with terror in their faces.

“Violence and abusive language is absolutely forbidden. Wash your bodies obediently, wear your clothes and grab your meal. And then go sleep for today. There are plenty of things we will do, but all of those can wait until tomorrow.” (Hifumi)

“Hey, wait!” (Helen)

Helen chased after Hifumi, who quickly heads towards his room upstairs, in a rush.

Reni, trying to follow after Hifumi and Reni, stops, turns in the direction of the slaves and takes off the hood.

Reni, who lightly shook her soft, white hair and the grown, twirled horns, smiles sweetly.

“It will be alright. I was taught various things after I met Hifumi-san. I’m sure it was difficult for you until now, but undoubtedly it will be fun from now on.” (Reni)

“A-Are you a slave of that human? Considering that, umm...”

What Reni is wearing is the white one-piece, Hifumi bought for her.

“Following Hifumi-san, whom I met in the wastelands, I’m studying humans. And, for the sake of playing something called “Take the nation”?, we picked up all of you since it seems to be the type of game, which is more fun with many companions.” (Reni)

“Let’s do it! Surely it will be fun”, Reni says laughing. The slaves, in a state of not comprehending, washed their bodies in turns following the instructions of the employees and changed into the brand new clothes.

It may be because of the large number of people, but the inn is in a state of being close to booked out.

Even the dining room has almost all seats taken by beastmen. The dishes, being carried over, vanish one after the other.

“It’s delicious...”

Once one of the slaves showed their feelings by murmuring just those few words, the slaves, separated at the tables all over, raised their voices to a “Delicious, it’s delicious” as if in concord and not few were shedding tears.

Having obtained a decent meal after a long while and it even being different from the food in the wastelands, which was at best meat roasted to some degree, the slaves tasted intricately and variously seasoned dishes and digested being alive for the first time.

Eventually the slaves approach Hifumi’s seat in turns to express their gratitude with a “Please treat me well” and bowing their head.

Without even especially having the intention to make them feel grateful, he considers they will be likely useful, if they are my subordinates one way or the other. Hifumi, who only ordered them to wash their bodies because he wanted to eat a meal with that filthy-smelling lot, has a bitter expression.

“... How irritating.” (Hifumi)

Reni, being with him, smiles at the griping Hifumi.

“But, all of them are happy.” (Reni)

“Oh well. I can probably tell because I knew of it as well, but once you eat food made by humans, you will find it strange that you were satisfied with the meat you ate up until now.” (Helen)

“Though, rather than eating something cut up, I like to sink my teeth into a fruit”, Helen laughs, too.

Gradually it reaches the point that laughter can be heard in the dining room. With the stimulus from their fellow slaves, even different races talk together about their hardships and similar with a smile.

“Hifumi-san.” (Reni)

“What’s up?” (Hifumi)

Reni called out to Hifumi, who frowned due to it having become noisy.

“Is this “Take the nation”? Everyone’s enjoying it, right? It’s as Hifumi-san said.” (Reni)

Looking at Reni facing him with a pure smile, Hifumi smiled and said “That’s right.”

“It will probably be alright, even if this is just the first step of taking the nation with such kind of nation being the target. Let me teach you guys the absolutely magnificent concept of “Freedom and Equality.” If you are able to comprehend it, you beastmen will likely be able to create delicious dishes and sturdy homes without having to rely on humans.” (Hifumi)

“Is that so!? Not only is “Take the nation” this much fun, but it will even become such an amazing thing!” (Reni)

“Yea~” (Hifumi) (T/N: Ebil, he is way too ebil, that Hifumi)

At the side of Reni, who accepts his words upfront, Helen is looking at Hifumi with eyes full of doubt, but since she isn't able to properly understand it either, she doesn't go as far as objecting him.

Noticing the matter Hifumi is talking about, the beastmen turn silent and prick their ears to listen attentively.

“But you know, to get this far, your cooperation will be necessary as well.” (Hifumi)

“I, I will do my best! I want our fathers to eat something delicious, too!” (Reni)

“Well, if it's for such reason, I wonder whether you know...” (Hifumi)

A single dog beastman stood up and got down on both his knees facing Hifumi's seat.

“I'm a dog beastman called Gengu ssu. *I was greatly impressed by master's compassionate story* ssu. Freedom and equality, aren't those nice words? I will use all my strength to help with what master is trying to accomplish ~ssu.” (Gengu)

The other beastmen also swarmed to Hifumi one after the other due to Gengu, who made such drama-like speech. They told him that they will do whatever they can as well.

“I got it, I got it.” (Hifumi)

Hifumi, who shrank back from the beastmen with their excessive and sweltering enthusiasm, has everyone shut up by telling them “Calm down for a moment.”

“Doing your best or whatever, you guys are slaves though. Settle down since I will prepare a bed and food for you, if you properly do the things

that have to be done.” (Hifumi)

Hifumi tells Reni and Helen to stand up. Once the two do as told, the gazes of the beastmen slaves focus on them.

“The sheep type is Reni and the rabbit type is Helen.” (Hifumi)

“Now then, I want you guys to do something very, very fun”, is what Hifumi told everyone with a well-carrying voice.

“I plan to make these two the rulers of this country. Being their vassals, you guys will attempt to take this country. How far will the beastmen be able to hold out? I want you to show me.” (Hifumi)

Listening until Hifumi’s final comment “Don’t worry. I will teach you the method”, the dining room abruptly falls into chaos with some roaring with motivation, laughter or astonishment.

“W-W-Wait a moment! If you say ruler, isn’t that the human country’s boss? It isn’t that simple for us beastmen to do that!” (Helen)

“H-Helen, what do we do...?” (Reni)

Ignoring the bewildered pair, Hifumi considered the movements from here on out.

“I want a little bit more numbers.” (Hifumi)

“If that’s the case, there’s a great place for that ~ssu.” (Gengu)

The dogman Gengu, who caught Hifumi’s murmur, got close to Hifumi while sliding.

“In the outskirts of this city there’s a place commonly referred to as

slums ssu. *There's a rumour that there are quite a few beastmen, who were thrown away by the humans, there ssu.*" (Gengu)

"Slums? I see." (Hifumi)

"But, as it seems that many of them are injured as well, it's uncertain whether they will be usable or not..." (Gengu)

"There's no need to worry about that." (Hifumi)

While looking at Gengu, Hifumi spinned around a suntetsu in his hand and thrust it in front of Gengu's eyeball within an instant.

Gengu had confidence in his eyesight, but he was shocked due to his inability to follow that motion.

"If they have at least a single hand, they will also be able to kill a person depending on the way of doing it. Including you guys as well, the problem is that it's "unknown" to you. After I teach you that, I will have you execute it for your dear life." (Hifumi)

"I'm no match for you", Gengu prostrated himself in front of Hifumi once again.

(Now then, with this I gathered the pieces, huh? The troublesome aspect of the jindori game is that I won't be able to play it by myself.) (Hifumi) It will be fine if the opponent will eagerly fight to the utmost, at least in the future, though, Hifumi bit off a clump of the meat left while having a faint anticipation in his chest.



Salgu failed to convince the beastmen of the slum, but that didn't mean that he had already given up.

As result of thinking won't they also change their way of thinking if our companions increase and if they get to know that it's possible to oppose the humans, Salgu entered the area inhibited by humans to show his own

strength.

Aiming to act at night, he confirms the houses and stores of many humans.

He crept into the places where the owners had fallen asleep, in particular those which are employing beastmen slaves, and took out the beastmen slaves.

With the first night not going well, on the second night it's one, on the third it's four and on the fourth night it is five beastmen. The numbers taken out are increasing well. Shattering the poor quality chains, he gives them their freedom.

He leads the released slaves to the slums in order to take them all to the wastelands in one go.

Even so, Salgu's plan failed at an unexpected place.

"I don't want to return to the wastelands."

A single slave refused the escape and opted to remain in the slums.

"Why? Don't you miss the freedom?" (Salgu)

"Did you know how difficult that freedom is? I felt angry in the beginning to have been bought by humans. But I don't have to even worry about aiming for a life different from the wastelands in the city. It's a life with no hardships and food being prepared for you, too."

Salgu was shocked hearing this argument.

Afterwards, some people of those, he planned to free, returned to the human houses, they had originally been at, and the remaining ones stayed in the slums.

Not a single one of them told him that they wanted to return to the wastelands.

“What’s this about!? We survived by hunting in the wastelands! We freely lived in the wastelands, that are spreading in all directions!” (Salgu)

After getting impatient as it’s not going well, Salgu’s words are gradually becoming rude.

“Well, that’s for someone as strong as you are. Young tiger beastmen and cunning wildlife people might not have been scared. But, we were already fed up with surviving in fright at a place, which is dangerous to our lives.”

The dog beastman, who called out to him previously as well, looked at Salgu and laughed.

“Didn’t I tell you? He is a reckless guy. Without looking at reality, he forces his own egoistical justice onto others. It’s simply annoying.”

“Get out of the slums”, is what the cold-hearted dog beastmen told him and the other beastmen also nodded in order to agree with his opinion.

“Such a... damn!” (Salgu)

Once Salgu gives the beastmen of the slums a glance, he leaves the slums at a quick pace.

“Why did something like this happen...? It’s the humans, eh? The beastmen were corrupted by humans and lost their freedom...?” (Salgu)

In the eyes of Salgu, who has been clenching his fists to the degree of blood coming out, the colour of insanity definitely began to manifest itself.

Chapter 92: Night Of The Hunter

The characters, written on the lithograph handed over by Prime Minister Adol, although old, were something Imeraria, who received education as royalty, was able to read to some extent.

“This is...” (Imeraria)

The details, which were written down there, evidently isn't a spell formula for the sake of sending back. Having finished to read it, Imeraria wasn't able to conceal her unrest due to the words mentioned at its end.

“Sealing spell formula...” (Imeraria)

If a magician with ability uses it, they will likely be able to seal even mighty monsters and powerful wizards, is what is written there. We pray that the day, where it will be necessary to use a spell to perform such a strong seal, won't come, are the words finishing the record.

“Adol-san, what's this about? This isn't a return spell formula. You said, during the talk with Origa-san, that you have been searching for a return spell, haven't you?” (Imeraria)

“Indeed. But I still haven't found that spell yet.” (Adol)

“Then showing me this sealing magic lithograph... what the heck are you planning?” (Imeraria)

Once Imeraria looks at Adol as if examining him carefully, his lips stiffened into a thin line.

“... Everything is for the sake of this country, Orsongrande.” (Adol)

“For the time being I shall hear out your opinion.” (Imeraria)

“Thank you very much.” (Adol)

Bent on his knees, Adol talks with a stance of having his head lowered.

“At this moment our country’s situation is stable. I guess it’s in a state with no issues, you might even say it’s doing well. You, Your Majesty, were enthroned, the economy has stabilized and even the populace has calmed down, that’s what I’m observing. As long as you don’t think about the cause for this either, a large part of it will be on account of Earl Tohno.” (Adol)

Even Imeraria frankly consented to the story this far. As there was interference from Vichy regardless of Hifumi’s existence, it was an exceedingly great merit for the country that the conflicts with the other countries settled with Orsongrande’s complete predominance.

“However, for the future country Earl Tohno will change into a huge burden. He became a hero for this country, but if his territory continues to grow, the positions of the country and Fokalore will likely reverse in the near future. No, if you talk about the aspect of the trust by his people and the engineering, you could already say that Fokalore’s evaluation has surpassed the capital’s.” (Adol)

“While that may be true, as reason for rejecting Hifumi-sama...”
(Imeraria)

“Your Majesty, the Queen.” (Adol)

With the knowledge of his impoliteness, Adol lifted his head and interrupted Imeraria.

“Everything is moving with Earl Tohno at the core. Although it’s an unbelievable story, I’m told that the basis of Fokalore’s commerce and industry has been handled with Earl Tohno’s views as foundation. His ability isn’t only that of doing battle.” (Adol)

“... Please, let me think about it for a bit. I’m deeply aware that I’m bearing the responsibility for this country’s fate. But, as for immediately accepting your arguments, it’s not like I have been able put my feelings about what happened to Pajou’s body in order yet.” (Imeraria)

Imeraria, who had cast down her eyes, slowly sighed as if adjusting her breathing.

“That was completely my error. Underestimating Hifumi-sama’s combat prowess, I belittled his intelligence. The one who stole her life was no one else but me.” (Imeraria)

“Your Majesty. Including me, all of your retainers are serving to follow Your Majesty’s heart’s desires. Please, don’t use words of repentance towards Knight Pajou. She acted on behalf of Your Majesty.” (Adol)

Barely keeping back her tears, Imeraria decided to look after the sealing spell and closed the meeting with Adol.

On the verge of leaving the room, Adol said at the last moment 「This is something for the sake of having him leave as hero without needing to kill him. Please, think well about it」. Those words were burned into her mind.



It was several days after he bought the beastmen slaves when Hifumi appeared at the slums. Without taking Reni and Helen along, he has only brought the dogman, Gengu, for guidance with him.

“If it’s at the location I was told about before, the place called slums should be ahead from here.” (Gengu)

The direction indicated by Gengu, was a path with a shabby atmosphere

having accumulated remains of buildings and trash continuing into a narrow back alley.

“I previously came to a place with such feeling as well. Well then, let’s go.” (Hifumi)

“Please wait! If a human suddenly entered there, what kind of experience will they...” (Gengu)

Ignoring Gengu, who tries to stop him, Hifumi quickly enters the slums’ interior.

Giving up his persuasion, Gengu followed Hifumi’s back in a hurry, too.

Once they exit the narrow alley, they arrive at a residential area with buildings lining up, although the collapsed buildings are standing out. Sensing signs of someone living there from several buildings, Hifumi, who guessed that they were turning their sights this way, aimlessly walks around while tapping the hilt of the katana, worn at his waist, with his finger.

“Every last of them doesn’t come out and merely peeks this way from within the buildings.” (Hifumi)

“They are probably cautious. It’s likely not unusual for humans to come here to catch beastmen.” (Gengu)

“But, it’s just one human with only a single beastmen”, Hifumi says. Probably thinking that they would be easy opponents, it didn’t take much time for several beastmen to appear and surround Hifumi.

By the looks they have assembled a clique of various tribes such as leopards and bears. From Hifumi’s point of view, it’s pleasing with a zoo-like feel.

“I dun’ know why ya came here by yerself, human, but we ain’t do anythin’ bad ta ya, if ya leave yer cash and go.”

A leopard beastman, who lost one arm, brings its face close to Hifumi with a questionable attitude making it uncertain whether they are

threatening or persuading him.

“Your breath stinks.” (Hifumi)

Hifumi sent the leopard beastman flying with a frontal kick.

The leopard beastman, who flew drawing a parabola without time to react, broke through a tattered house.

Did the wall act as cushion? Apparently avoiding to faint, the beastman unsteadily stood up and and grasped its belly.

“Bastard!”

“P-Please wait!” (Gengu)

Gengu rushed out in front of an enraged bear beastman.

“This person is someone, who will become a hope for us beastmen! Please listen to him even if it’s only for the story.” (Gengu)

“Hope, you say?”

“You will likely understand once you look at my clothes. Those, who became slaves of humans, won’t be able to wear such nice clothes, will they!?” (Gengu)

“Why are you doing something like being an ally of a human!?”

Disregarding the mutual dispute between Gengu and the slums’ beastmen, Hifumi approached the leopard beastmen, he sent flying.

“Do you still want to continue? If you do, I will kill you.” (Hifumi)

“... I give up. Life is precious.”

Leaving alone the leopard, who was hanging his head, Hifumi turned around.

“It looks like this guy has given up. Is there anyone else, who wants to pick a fight with me?” (Hifumi)

As it seemed that the leopard beastman was an existence similar to a powerful troubleshooter among the beastmen of the slums, there wasn't anyone answering Hifumi's call.

Sighing due to being very disappointed, Hifumi sat down on a fitting debris.

“Have the beastmen of this slum gather here.” (Hifumi)

“W-What the hell are you planning?”

Due to the leopard beastman's question, Hifumi pointed his finger and answered,

“We will build your guys' city in these slums.” (Hifumi)

The beastmen, who heard Hifumi's words, opened their mouths dumbfoundedly.

Only Gengu surveyed the surroundings keeping up his smile.

“No matter how many times I hear it, it's an interesting dream. I want to do it in one shot, too.” (Gengu)



During the time Hifumi has gone out to the slums, Reni, Helen and the other beastmen, who were left behind, stayed at the inn.

Be that as it may, that doesn't mean they spent their time care-freely.

“T-To suffer such a...” (Helen)

It is Helen prostrating herself at a table in corner of the dining room set as reserved.

In front of her is a book made out of fine quality paper. Next to it there is a messy handwriting lining up on a separate parchment.

Reni was earnestly grasping a pen and studying besides Helen.

“Reni, what are you doing as if your life depended on it? It's not what that human told you. Even among humans there are plenty, who don't study.” (Helen)

“But, Hifumi-san said that I won't be able to start looking like a ruler, if I don't study...” (Reni)

“... Has he really said that?” (Helen)

“Yeah.” (Reni)

Helen, who made an expression as if being astounded, stares directly at Reni.

“What to say... humans are still a bit scary, but doing various things such as tasks, writing and thinking, such things didn't exist in the wastelands, right? You can even say that about this studying. Writing down many things I don't know, it has reached the point that I'm steadily comprehending things I didn't understand.” (Reni)

Reni put down the pen and grabbed Helen's hands.

“Don’t you think it’s interesting? And, Hifumi-san said that he will build the first city of the beastmen race. It will be a city, won’t it? It will have various stores like the human city and beastmen of various tribes will work on things, they like and are strong at.” (Reni)

“Well that’s... if it’s going to be like that, it will be fun, I guess, but...” (Helen)

When Helen casts down her eyes at the textbook, there are the official characters and vocabulary lined up in a row. Although she somehow memorized the way of reading those, it was still far too difficult for her to write words.

She was told that Hifumi was able to read and write the general sentences in a few days, but Helen is doubting that.

“What do you want to do once the city is built, Helen? Is it a store? It seems to be interesting, even if you say you will grow vegetables, right?” (Reni)

“Growing vegetables and selling them in a store, even if I become a ruler?” (Helen)

“Eh...? I wonder what will happen?” (Reni)

The beastwoman in front of the two, having such conversation, had a damaged voice. Same as Helen she is a rabbitwoman, but, with an age of around 20 years, she is missing one ear from the root. Apparently it was cut off at the time she was caught by humans when she was still a child. (T/N: For an illustration, check the volume cover in the ToC)

“Both of you aren’t used to a human city. As a more important character than soldiers and knights, the king’s job is to manage the country by giving out directions. Although it’s not by all means, you won’t have the time to run something like a store, will you?”

The rabbitwoman with the slightly drooping eyes smiles gently at Reni and Helen.

“Becoming this old, I certainly didn’t think I would be allowed to study

by a human. If I imagine future, it's nice to have a dream. 10 years already passed since I was caught and turned into a slave, but it's the first time I'm able to ponder what I want to do or what I will do like this."

Listening to her words, Reni noticed something.

"Is that so? Helen, at the time, when we were in the wastelands, we just thought about our immediate safety and the matters of being able to gather food, but we did have a conversation about our future unnoticed during our talks with Hifumi-san." (Reni)

"I see." (Helen)

Helen also opened her eyes widely.

"If I remember correctly, the things, I talked about with you, Reni, increased as well, though it was just me being afraid of something. Talks such as about food or tools to be sold at a store..." (Helen)

"If the beastmen city is built and if it's possible to invite everyone, it will become wonderful!" (Reni)

"Alright, I will do my best", Reni once again clasped the pen with a rough nasal breathing. Helen also followed up by muttering Let's do my best within her mind.

"Didn't that human tell us to study something once we done with characters?" (Helen)

Helen voiced out her question in a murmur.

"Mmh~ that is." (Reni)

Reni looks up at the ceiling and recount what she remembered,

“If I’m not mistaken, it’s the know-how of serving customers? Or something like that?” (Reni)

“What’s that?” (Helen)

“I don’t know.” (Reni)

While watching the two looking at each other, the one-eared rabbitwoman had an unfounded feeling to try believing into her new master. Though they have been associating with him for only a few days, looking at the state of Helen and Reni, he appears to be a nice master.



On a certain day in the local area, a strange commission was delivered to the craftsmen of Swordland.

From the craftsmen in the industrial fields, such as carpenters and blacksmiths, to chefs, like bakers and such, and even those employed in the service sector, such as inn employees, it reached various people.

Given that it had also an excellent reward, many of them headed to the designated inn.

They flinched at the beastmen lining up in a row there, but receiving a properly polite 「Please」 and seeing them enthusiastically trying to collect information with shining eyes, even if it wasn’t about a significant craft, on top of them listening to their speeches honestly, the craftsmen even were in a good mood before realizing it.

Gradually splitting the groups by the learning content, they get into the core of the parts of their professions.

From the start there is a considerable number of beastmen slaves within the city. It may be because there were also beastmen doing the shopping for their masters among them, that for commoners, with the exception of nobles, there was a weak feeling of shirking away from the beastmen’s existence in itself. The emotional part, which Hifumi confirmed by experimenting in the dining room of the inn, was no issue, but only if you

restrict the talk to commoners.

At the same time the carpenters were requested to do a different job, too.

It's a large-scale repair operation of the slums.

Being attentive to the astonishing detailed blueprints, the carpenters skilfully dismantled the old buildings in order, starting with the dwellings of the beastmen, and constructed buildings, to be used as stores, manufacturing cabins and moreover even smithies and bathhouses.

Given that the beastmen carried in wood, which was used as material, from outside in succession, the work advanced at a quick pace without being delayed.

Beastmen, who participated in the carpentry work, appeared as well and those, who have strength, and those, who are specialized in acrobatics, played a central role in tasks, that would usually require the help of several humans. Since it was steadily making progress with just the beastmen joining in, some among the carpenters appeared, who proposed that they wanted help with the work down-town as well.

The slums, which were occupied by deserted houses and debris, has gradually turned into a new city that can't be called slums anymore.

The person, who has been providing the funds, had many obscure parts, such as the source of money, with him only appearing sometimes at briefing sessions. But due to the easiness beyond expectations to associate with the beastmen, who were said to be the investor's slaves, and the virtue of monetary payment, there wasn't anyone pursuing that point either.

Before long, beastmen, who have obtained the know-how in running businesses, have started to appear. At last the slums have finished the facilities to function as healthy city.

“Hyaa~ ... Somehow it's an amazing situation ~ssu.” (Gengu)

“There ain't no appearance or shadow of slums either.”

The dogman, Gengu, and the one-armed leopard beastman walked to a

nearby place in the city, where the shop area was created earlier.

“The human’s intelligence is somethin’ terrific. Although we used the buildings without thinkin’ anythin’ ’bout it, it was unexpected for them to have been built with various ideas to that extent.”

“Did we live by ‘us beastmen are great’ because we are strong and because we don’ quite understand human matters?” The leopard beastman spit out self-deprecating words.

“Moreover, until we were bought by Hifumi-san, we didn’t even consider to do such a cooperative work with comrades from other tribes and much less with humans ~ssu.” (Gengu)

“That’s right... However, there’s a single matter I’m worried about.”

The leopard beastman, having a serious look, stroke his chin with his remaining arm.

“Even among humans, aren’t there those coming to catch beastmen like us such as soldiers and knights? Leaving aside the normal humans, it won’t even be funny, if 5~6 soldiers come here, but...”

The leopard beastman’s worry was something occurring in reality.

At the time the carpenters returned from the slums when the day came to an end, several soldiers came entering the slums.

A single youth stands in front of them, who have been surprised by the appearance of the slums lining up clean buildings.

With his usual black hakama on the dougi and the katana hanging on his hips, it’s Hifumi.

“You are... not a beastman. What are you doing here?”

Once a single soldier asked for his identity, Hifumi smoothly drew the slender sword.

The sword has a curve with a single edge. The beautiful, as if charming people, hamon is reflecting the pale moonlight.

“If I were to say it one way or the other... I was waiting for intruders like you guys. This might be the most truthful answer. It’s something I have put you through every and every night.” (Hifumi)

“The people, who went to investigate and haven’t come back, are... everyone, prepare your swords!”

While feeling a bizarre atmosphere due to the young man laughing with a “Kukuku”, the soldiers drew their swords.

“You drew them. Then it’s fine.” (Hifumi)

It seems Hifumi will be able to enjoy this evening as well. He was thankful to the beastmen city, which became an excellent bait, though it cost money.

Chapter 93: Twist and Shout

The soldiers of Swordland are holding their swords with both hands as well.

Having a length of around 1 m with their blades extending straight-lined, they give a boorish impression coupled with thickness.

The soldiers, who are facing Hifumi, grasped those swords tightly. They broke into a run while motivating themselves with “There’s just one enemy.”

“You mad friend of the animals! Die!”

A single sword, swept sideways, approaches Hifumi rapidly.

But, taking one step forward, Hifumi prepared the katana vertically and hit his enemy’s elbow with it. Assisted by the weight and force of the soldier’s sword, the elbow broke with a dry sound.

“Gyaaa...”

At the point the soldier gave a short scream, Hifumi’s katana slips into the soldier’s neck.

The soldiers faltered from the smiling man, who deliberately bathed in the spurt of blood.

“Aren’t your swings fairly fast? However, it’s not merely about swinging it.” (Hifumi)

“You use the hamon like this”, Hifumi stepped into and hit the group, which was in a sorry state, with thrusts. He stabbed both eyes of the

soldier, standing at the forefront, up to the brain.

Sending the soldier, who collapses without even a single sound, flying with a kick, he cut up the bellies of the soldiers, flinching from the thrown body, horizontally in a straight line.

There are two left.

Hifumi slowly approaches the soldiers, who have already lost the will to fight, holding the katana, which is dripping with blood.

“W-Why are you acting as ally of the beastmen?”

“I’m not particularly their ally.” (Hifumi)

In reality he had crushed several villages killing more than 100 beastmen in the wastelands.

“If you become my enemy, it will be the same treatment for beastmen as for humans. If you cut them, meat can be seen and blood gushes out. Look.” (Hifumi)

With a sharp thrust he sliced the carotid artery of the asking soldier with a snapping sound* and a red fountain gushed forth. (T/N: パックリ or pakuri)

“All living beings trying to survive in this world have the same flesh and blood. I’m supporting the principle of equality, thus I won’t discriminate.” (Hifumi)

The soldier, who collapsed losing blood, died before Hifumi finishes his speech.

The remaining soldier has already let go of his sword and is retreating slowly.

“Don’t run away. Let’s enjoy it until the end.” (Hifumi)

“U-Uwaah...”

The second the soldier turned his back unable to endure it, the katana's point pierced through the back of the neck and was reflected in the soldier's view.

While struggling due to choking and confusion, he vomited blood violently.

How was the appearance of Hifumi, who looked down on him, reflected in the soldier's field of vision, which was blacking out? In a state of having his eyes widely opened in terror, the last one passed away.

“He died, huh? The level of the underlings is around this much, eh? I wonder, will I be able to enjoy the feast a bit longer, if it's a group of knights? Say, do you know?” (Hifumi)

Hifumi threw a question facing the shadow of a building close to him.

A large shadow of a person shows a sign of surprise and escapes without saying anything.

“Yes? ... I wondered whether it will be a match with someone quite powerful, but... well, who cares.” (Hifumi)

“The next prey probably won't come to today's spot”, Hifumi wiped the katana with a folded paper and returned to the building, which he is using for lodging.



The one who escaped from being asked about his identity by Hifumi at the stage of the tragedy was no one else but Salgu.

He, who returned to the slums after observing the human area for a while, was surprised of the slum's appearance, which completely changed in a short time.

“What the hell, this is... a human?” (Salgu)

In the slum city humans are walking alongside beastmen as if it was a common occurrence. Their state can't be seen as anything else but them being close friends, with no distinction of slave and master.

Once he proceeded into the slum's interior, reflexively hiding himself and moving stealthily, he discovered the remains of the previous slums' appearance with old houses, which haven't been demolished yet.

“Oh, Aren't you Mr. Ally-of-Justice?”

The one who called out to Salgu, who is at a loss, was the one-armed dogman. It was the man, he met first, when he entered the slums.

“Is the rescue of beastmen or such making progress?”

The dogman, who is laughing loudly*, is completely different from the time when he met him the last time. He wore neatly tailored clothes.
(T/N: *karakara*)

“What the heck happened to the slums? It looks like humans have entered, too.” (Salgu)

“Even if you ask what happened, I dun' know either. What I know is that there's work I can do as well. Even if it's only for the obtaining of decent food.”

“Work, you say?” (Salgu)

Salgu tilted his head to the side due to the words he hasn't heard about in the wastelands.

“Well, yea. Even one-armed I'm able to at least carry goods and hammer nails. Even this house, I was contracted to help with it. Well, I

was mostly trained by humans though.”

Salgu faced his fangs at the bashful dogman.

“Is it that much fun to have been used by humans? In the end, if you have become a slave...” (Salgu)

“Your outlook is really narrow.”

The dogman shook his head and shrugged his shoulders with a “Good grief.”

“It’s different from being a slave. Working and receiving money for that work, you can buy food with it. I bought clothes, too. There’s no danger to my life either. You won’t be able to anticipate something like being able to relish variously tasting food in the wastelands, right?”

“But you don’t have to do something like following what the likes of humans tell you!” (Salgu)

“We lived by “us beastmen are fine” due to the “likes of humans.” Are you still unable to comprehend that? Even if you killed one or two humans, it will only be natural for our standing to not change, if we don’t change.”

“Though that’s second-hand telling of what the sheep jou-chan said”, the dogman laughs looking embarrassed.

Salgu isn’t able to understand that at all.

Running about freely in the wastelands and spending time in nature without being tied by anyone should be the best for beastmen. But, the man in front of him is glad being used by humans and to associate with them.

“You are... what is it with you?” (Salgu)

The dogman can't help but smile bitterly due to the words, which rushed out of Salgu's mouth.

“Oi, oi, are you alright?”

The dogman, who drew near in worry, tried to place his hand on the shoulder of Salgu, who is much larger than him, but Salgu, displaying his nimble ability, knocked that arm away.

“Guaa! Bastard!”

“You son of a bitch!” (Salgu)

Due to the dogman raising a voice of anger and pain, the claws of Salgu, who countered with swearing, attack the dogman.

The paw, thrust at the dogman's opened mouth, stabbed all the way through to the back of the head.

The head, which was almost plucked off, drops limply and the dogman's body falls to its knees and collapses.

Although it's the slums, is in the dead centre of the city during day. It's not only one or two passers-by, who witnessed that.

Looking at the sticky blood attached to his right hand, the ears of Salgu, who came to his senses, heard a scream and he surveyed his surroundings.

There were humans and beastmen in the vicinity, but watching them retreat showing looks of fright, Salgu realized that he was the cause of the scream.

“I-It's different! This is...” (Salgu)

“Murderer!”

“Someone! Please help!”

Salgu’s explanation doesn’t reach anyone.

It was a situation, where it was impossible to lend an ear to the overly selfish explanation of a 3 m big bearman, who is swinging around his bloodstained hands in a circle, trying to rectify his previous action.

“Guu... damn!” (Saulgu)

Pushing his way through the clamouring people, Salgu ran away from the area.

Salgu escaped deeper into the slums without even turning his eyes at the beastmen and humans opening the way while screaming.

Plunging into a decayed, broken building, the day came to an end while he is pondering about an excuse scared of the pursuers.

And, at the time when the veil of darkness descended, he saw Hifumi, who killed humans as human, at the place, he came back to, moving stealthily.

The best he could do now was to frantically hold down the urge of wanting to scream having his emotions and faith stirred up within his mind.

Salgu, who confirmed that dreadful human having gone somewhere, walked unsteadily wishing for a hiding place in the area, where the humans live, as the situation of him being in the slums has become scary.



The mood of Swordland’s king, Buell, was extremely bad.

And, once again, plenty of reports have come in to cause his ill humour.

“... There are no reports from the soldiers dispatched to the slums. Without them even returning, it’s unknown what the cause might be.”

The king grabs the armrest of the throne with strained fingers. *Creak* is the sound reverberating during the quiet audience.

However, the knight, who came to report, cannot afford to stop his words.

“According to the information of people, who infiltrated by blending in with the carpenters during daytime, the beastmen apparently were reconstructing the slums’ buildings, incorporating engineering and starting sham shops. It seems they even heard the rumour of them creating agricultural land in one part, but that couldn’t be confirmed.”

The knight, who took a breath, stole a fleeting glance at the king.

He knows that the king’s flushing face is under a level of pressure looking to snap any time soon. If the knight wasn’t giving his report while being quite away from in front of the throne, he might have been slain in irritation.

“... There are talks that the soldiers were killed, but it appears that even among the beastmen it’s unknown who might have done it. Even the murder case of a fellow beastman...”

“Enough!” (Buell)

The king, who interrupted the knight, stood up and entrusted his voice to rage.

“Since when have the soldiers of this country become a gathering of weaklings, who are even unable to enter a city of beastmen! Although

they are soldiers, don't they even have the elation to be the pride of the knight country!?" (Buell)

"My king. Something like soldier won't even exceed a gathering of plebeians, who went broke, after all. Shouldn't you teach the foolish beastmen, who are imitating humans, their standing by deploying the knights here?"

A single, young man stepped forward among the knights lining up in a row in the audience hall. He has well-featured looks and blonde hair, which had a lax, wavy hairstyle. He has many aspects found in high-ranking nobles of Swordland with a good pedigree.

"... Then, if it's you, you will be able to handle it, is what you say, Zebul (T/N: Zeburu <<)?" (Buell)

"I swear by my sword." (Zebul)

With a pompous bearing, the man called Zebul laughed broadly.

"Well then, I order you, take some soldiers and sweep the slums." (Buell)

"Please wait! If a knight moves to the current slums, the civilians won't be unaffected either. It won't be too late even after going ahead with an investigation here!"

A civil official, who had advanced to old age, advocated his opinion to the king's order in a hurry, but for the king it was jarring and not a good advice.

"Investigation, you say? What will you do after the investigation then? Are you even telling me to leave it alone after getting all friendly with the beastmen!?" (Buell)

“That is...”

“I operate in order to protect the order of this country, for the sake of upholding that knights are justice. Even if a number of victims appeared among the commoners, I won’t mind it either.” (Buell)

“It’s as the the king states. Our Swordland is a nation composed of knights judging the beastmen. It stands depending on us military men dealing with the beastmen and teaching them their own place. There’s no necessity or such to deliberate thoroughly animal rights and the situation of commoners, who misunderstood it, this late in the game.” (Zebul)

The king nodded and the other knights also raised voices of approval towards the words of Zebul, who is spreading his arms and talking as if persuading his surroundings.

In contrast the civil officials are making bitter faces, but the position of a civil official in this country is extremely low. No matter how good their pedigree might be, they will be looked down upon, if they don’t possess military power.

“My king. It’s a precious opportunity, thus I think that I want to do it somewhat flashily, but what is your opinion on that? I feel as if the commoners and beastmen are making light of us knights. I should teach them about who’s a leader, being a strong person even among those visible here, with the exception of a single person.” (Zebul)

“I see... very well, try and show me your greatness. However, If you fail, you will pay with your life for the crime of disgracing the pride of the knights.” (Buell)

Zebul went down on one knee towards the glaring king with a nonchalant air.

“At your will.” (Zebul)



Why did it become like this? Helen couldn't follow the situation to a degree that not only did she ask that herself many times within her head, but she also put it into words.

As soon as she moved out from the inn, where she spent several days, she is taken along to a city, where there are many beastmen. While she is given a house for the sake of living there together with Reni and is continuing to study, she consults with many humans and gives advice regarding houses and shops of other beastmen.

“Wouldn't it be better for the entrance and exit of a bird beastman's house to be at a high place, I wonder?”

“Since it's not like they are always flying, even if they are birds, wouldn't it be even better to have them come and go below and on top?”

“Is this kind of size fine for the house of a tiger beastmen?”

“Since there are also many large fellows among them, I believe it will be difficult for them to enter and leave, if the height and width isn't about this much.”

One after the other human carpenters turn up and throw questions at Helen.

While going around the neighbourhood's construction sites, being all over, she answers the questions of the carpenters.

“Ah, geez! Take it a bit slower!” (Helen)

Helen rises her voice unintentionally, however since there are also the carpenters waiting at the next building, she is going to lose her presence of mind, if she doesn't finish up quickly.

Given that Helen has also been aware that those are buildings for the

sake of beastmen, she headed to the next building with a worn-out expression having no reason to refuse them either.

At the same time Reni was in the middle of a briefing session with beastmen in a newly built shop.

“The “money”, used by humans, has these three colours. This is the same as 100 coins of this and this is the same as 100 coins of that.” (Reni)

While pointing at the lined-up currency in turns, Reni slowly explains the value of the coins.

As result of the sheepgirl with the fluffy, white hair care-freely talking about calculation with a gentle voice, there are also some getting attacked by drowsiness, but they were forcibly woken up by the rough beastmen there stepping on their feet or hitting them.

Of those lining up to study, half are beastmen, originally from the slums, and half are beastmen, bought as slaves by Hifumi, with around 10 each of both sexes.

“But, you know, it’s difficult, if you want to have to count each and every single one of such large number.”

“It’s alright. Ordinary people apparently won’t use this gold coin often. It will be fine, if you just make the price of the goods something easy to count... is what Hifumi-san said.” (Reni)

There are no people raising any complaints due to Reni embarrassedly answering “It’s second-hand knowledge.” Currently there’s no one as knowledgeable about businesses and the life of humans as her. Therefore it naturally turned into her accepting consultations and questions from senior beastmen.

You could also say that Helen suffered getting mixed up in that.

“Hifumi-san, huh...? As we haven’t seen him much recently, I wonder, what is he doing? Rather than a human, that person has an aura close to

that of a ferocious beastman.”

The old sheepwoman of the same tribe as Reni laughed displaying her chipped teeth.

“Who knows... at the time I met him yesterday for a bit, he looked somehow happy, but...” (Reni)

“He is different from the ferocious beastmen, the old woman talks about”, Reni said bluntly.

“Hifumi-san is brutal for a ferocious person. But, do you believe that normal people are normal people? He treated me properly...” (Reni)

“Ah, sorry, Reni-chan. That wasn’t my intention. Besides, it’s probably only natural for beastmen to be attracted to strong people. Do your best.”

“Yea. I will do my best!” (Reni)

She didn’t understand what the old woman was cheering her on for, but Reni thought it’s probably about the learning given by Hifumi and gave an energetic reply.

The wryly-smiling old woman gently stroke Reni’s head and said “It’s because you are still small.”

Chapter 94: Pour It Up

The murder of a beastman by another beastman caused a disturbance among the beastmen of the slums.

Although it was the slums, they didn't interfere with each other unless one was a great outlaw. Since it was right now also a phase, where everyone was actually experiencing the city improving, the search for the culprit, mainly by the people who witnessed it, was tinged with a mania.

“So now it has come to the talk whether it's not necessary to patrol the slums as well ~ssu.” (Gengu)

For Gengu there's also the situation of one of his own tribe getting killed. Taking the initiative, he was looking everywhere for the bearman, who has been named as culprit.

“I'm doing my best at searching too, but it is quite difficult.” (Reni)

“I do know that, but why are you telling this to me...?” (Gengu)

Reni answered with a troubled expression to Gengu, who stuck out his tongue with a laugh.

“Rather than someone like me, isn't such a thing a speciality for a dogman like Gengu-san?” (Reni)

“However, Hifumi-san's leading slaves are Reni-san and Helen-san. I believe it to be wrong, if I don't ask about your opinion first ~ssu.” (Gengu)

“Since when did we become leaders...? Surely it's not because you have cold feet to directly consult with Hifumi-san due to being scared or such, is it?” (Helen)

Gengu unintentionally lets his look swim due to the partially teasing words of Helen.

“Bull’s-eye!?! Even if it isn’t at the level of a tiger, a dogman should be plenty powerful, no?”

“That man is special! Impossible, it’s impossible even for tigers or wolves. That man’s strength is unrelated to being a human or such. Therefore, I thought it would be possible to request the favourite people of that man to put in a bit of a good word ~ssu.” (Gengu)

“Just a second, who is Hifumi-san’s favourite?” (Helen)

Due to Helen’s objection, Gengu tilted his head with a “Huh?”

“I hear that you were together with him from the beginning, when you entered this country, though ~ssu. You have a good relationship with Hifumi-san, right?” (Gengu)

“What good relationship?” (Helen)

Helen has become speechless with a red face, however Reni didn’t understand the meaning of Gengu’s words and is staring at him in puzzlement.

In reverse Gengu was surprised that they were still children to such an extent.

“This is, I of all people, have made a terrible misunderstanding...” (Gengu)

“Really! Don’t get such weird ideas, okay!?” (Helen)

Being angry with a huff, Helen’s ears stood on end and she ended up going somewhere.

“Oops~” (Gengu)

“It’s alright, Gengu-san. I will talk with Helen later. Leaving that aside, at the time something is stolen or people get killed, it seems that soldiers will investigate and arrest the bad person in the human’s city.” (Reni)

“Soldiers, it is? About this, to leave it to human soldiers is...” (Gengu)

“Well, then isn’t it fine if it’s not humans?” (Reni)

“Ha?” (Gengu)

“If we beastmen are able to cultivate land and run stores like humans, won’t we be able to do the same job like the soldier-san’s as well?” (Reni)

“I-I see.” (Gengu)

Gengu, who had dropped his shoulders, raises his head as if jumping up and runs away to gather his friends.

“Off he went...” (Reni)

Seeing off Gengu, whose figure vanished from sight within the blink of an eye, Reni began the continuation of her studies. What she is currently reading are the teaching materials used as examination to become a civil official of Fokalore. It’s content, which, putting Caim aside, took Doelgar and Paryu quite the troubles to remember, but Reni smoothly and obediently learns them as she has absolutely no prejudices either.

“Phew... the human’s studying, it’s quite hard.” (Reni)



The beastmen association, which was formed with a few words of Reni, was a filthy, grim group of men proud of their strength, but they were extremely superior as vigilante corps.

Patrolling the slums during the breaks of their own work, they solve crimes and lesser problems. They also actively move for things like sheltering new beastmen, who escaped from the humans, take care of drunkards and protect lost children. They have become an organisation, that gathers trust, with many more tasks than human soldiers.

Facilitating even the acceptance of beastmen, who weren't able to find good work for the aptitude they possess, the increase of their numbers accelerated with Gengu playing a leading role.

Discovering the corpses of human soldiers at the entrance of the slums again and again, it naturally even reached the point of the vigilante corps relying on the humans, entering and leaving, since those were bloody incidents, too.

And, the one, they had their eyes on, was Hifumi.

“Ho ho, aren't you planning something quite interesting.” (Hifumi)

“H-Hifumi-san!?” (Gengu)

Due to Hifumi suddenly making an appearance at the old building, which is serving as headquarters of the vigilante corps, Gengu stood up in a hurry and brought the chair with the cleanest state.

“Ah, don't mind me. Rather than that, something like establishing a vigilante corps, aren't you passing your time in a wonderful way?” (Hifumi)

“No, not at all! It's thanks to having received a hint from Reni-san ~ssu. As they are originally clumsy guys, who have no brains and are only good at fighting, this is a comfortable gathering of people.” (Gengu)

Once asked, there are around 20 guys working full-time and around 50 beastmen, who are treated as reserve corps helping on the patrols while doing other jobs.

Basically they are operating with the donations of beastmen stores, but there is also a part of donations coming from humans.

“At present we are somehow able to handle it. ... But, we haven’t been able to find that beast murderer yet...” (Gengu)

Hifumi gently called out to Gengu, who lowered his voice and showed his fangs looking frustrated.

“Well, don’t give up. However, if you can’t even find him in these confined slums while using such a number of people, isn’t it likely that he’s not in the slums anymore?” (Hifumi)

“In other words, he left towards the wastelands, is what you are saying?” (Gengu)

“No, it’s something else.” (Hifumi)

Hifumi shakes his head.

“I heard it from other guys too, but that criminal spoke with hostility towards the slums’ people before, right? And, that guy freed several beastmen from the humans. Do you believe such fellow will sneakily return to the wastelands?” (Hifumi)

“Then, did he go to where the humans live?” (Gengu)

“You should consider that possibility too, right?” (Hifumi)

“Such a... Well, then we won’t be able to pursue him anymore, eh...” (Gengu)

Hifumi lightly hit the discouraged Gengu with his fist.

“You give up far too easily, idiot.” (Hifumi)

“Eh? Is there some... way?” (Gengu)

Hifumi, who dropped his fist on Gengu’s head, breathed out a “You moron.”

“Ponder about it with your group a bit. Putting that aside, it seems like you should prepare more seriously, I came to tell you that.” (Hifumi)

“Is there something going on ~ssu?” (Gengu)

Due to Gengu asking while rubbing his head, Hifumi folds his arms and continues to explain.

“Yea, for the last few days soldiers have frequently tried to enter the slums here during the night. “By accident” I happened to pass by and since the other side attacked me by drawing their swords, although I haven’t done anything, they rolled around on the road being beaten and killed every time, but...” (Hifumi)

“So Hifumi-san was the cause of those soldier’s corpses, huh...?” (Gengu)

Gengu, who tensed his mind with “Good gracious, it’s the bearman’s doing, eh?”, becomes bitter at himself. He believes that “by accident” or such to be a lie, however since he values his life, he doesn’t voice that out.

“It seems, as result of the soldiers not coming back, they will team up with a knight group and come to the slums.” (Hifumi)

“Such a thing! But, why do you know about that?” (Gengu)

“Touring down-town, I grasped the castle buying food up, the nobles employing weapon shops for maintenance and increasingly ordering new weapons. There are talks about the increase of requests regarding something like harness adjustment. Since the soldiers here don’t use horses, the ones moving are likely the knights. There are also rumours that the knight’s training increased. Because I’m unable to think of any other reason for the knights to expressly move at this point in time, I dare say that their aim is likely this place here.” (Hifumi)

“So, what will you do?” Hifumi asked, but Gengu wasn’t in a state of being able to answer due to the shock.

“I-It’s a disaster...” (Gengu)

“Calm down.” (Hifumi)

Receiving Hifumi’s poke in the forehead due to his nose running, Gengu drops to the floor, rolls over a few times and faints in agony.

“The way to deal with the knights is simple. First, humans are weak. Using horses, they barely manage to catch up with your beastmen feet. Using swords, they are somehow able to cause injuries to you guys.” (Hifumi)

“Eh? Then you are no human after all, are you, Hifumi-san...?” (Gengu)

Gengu had a fist lowered at him once again.

“Don’t change the subject. In other words, if you fight using your head and the same weapons, it will be a situation where you don’t have to be afraid of knight and their likes at all.” (Hifumi)

While Hifumi, who stood up, corrected the position of the katana at his waist, he looked down on Gengu, who has been showing his belly having fallen to the ground.

“Gather the guys, who have spare time. I will teach them the way of fighting.” (Hifumi)



Salgu himself was aware of being in a state you couldn't call sane anymore.

He looks at the beastmen, who are enslaved by humans, specifies the house, they are attached to, for later and waits for them to fall asleep to kill the family during that time.

And he saves the beastmen, who have become slaves, but...

“What do you want me to do by saving me here?”

The wolf beastman, who lost all its claws on both paws, doesn't even get up from the corner of the stable.

“Even I hated the humans at the beginning. But you know, if you get to know that, rather than living in the wastelands, the way of being the human's slave is quite safe, comfortable and that you are able to eat food, there's nothing to return to in the wastelands except danger.”

“...Is, that so...?” (Salgu)

“Even if I lost my usefulness, I won't be killed, you know. It seems I will be thrown into the slums, but since I will receive sufficient of the human's leftovers there, it appears I will be able to survive with small* rationed portions.” (T/N: *chima chima*)

“Seeing that my masters died, I guess there's nothing left for me but to go there too”, the grumbling wolf beastman laughed weakly.

The expression of Salgu, who looks down on him, can't be seen by the

wolf beastman under the cover of the dark night.

“Don’t you feel the wish to return to the wastelands?” (Salgu)

“Eh? The wastelands, I miss them, but...”

Laughing foolishly, the wolf beastman shakes its head. It seems that he is shaking off some unpleasant memory with that gesture.

“That place is a hell. You run from place to place like the rabbits and sheep or you have no choice but to continuously repeat a daily life of killing or being killed without even the time to sleep restfully. It’s not a place where you can sleep with a peace of mind like this place either. I don’t want to experience the sensation of hunger, which grows violent due to the hardships to look for food, anymore.”

“Is that so? Got it.” (Salgu)

Salgu brought down his fist, drove it into the face of the wolf beastman, who looked up at him, and sunk it into flesh and blood with a soggy sound.

Staring at the fist, he extracted from the face with a wet sound, Salgu pondered.

There’s intense pain within his head, which has stirred up his thoughts like noise, but even so, he pondered.

“This city in itself has been a bad influence on the beastmen...” (Salgu)

The food, given by humans, the buildings, the livelihood, all of that caused the beastmen to lose the spirit, they should originally have, is what Salgu concluded.

He repeatedly puzzles over countermeasure with his head hurting

strongly.

He sits down besides the fallen corpse of the wolf beastman in the stable, which is filled with the smell of blood.

“Calm down. If I smash up the humans, everything should come to an end.” (Salgu)

Salgu’s eyes are looking at the face of the dead wolf beastman. It’s completely as if he’s talking to him.

“That’s right. If I’m able to crush the boss of the humans too, the human city will be finished as well.” (Salgu)

Standing up, Salgu reached the point of being able to believe that things have become extremely clear in his head.

He walks forth in order to accomplish the clear, simple, decided matter.

“The human’s boss, where is he...?” (Salgu)

An insane bearman walks through the city’s night.

Chapter 95: Arrogance

“The act of educating people is nothing arrogant.”

In the city of Fokalore, seen from the balcony of the Lord’s mansion, various men and women of all ages are going back and forth. For each person it’s one scene in their life; be it that they are laughing or crying; be it that they are spending their time together with someone or are by themselves.

While gazing at it from a distant place, Origa murmured that as if being by herself, however there is a single person listening to her. It’s Caim.

“Everyone is earnestly living the one life they have. Extending our hands to them and talking with them, we end up twisting their fates under the pretext of education. No one knows about the future, but everyone is living without knowing whether theirs is the correct way.”
(Origa)

“... Madam seems to be thinking in some ways about education, but did you discover some problem?” (Caim)

“No.” (Origa)

Origa turns around with a whirl and smiles sweetly at Caim.

“There’s no mistake in what my husband... Hifumi-sama is doing. The training as well as the education carried out in this city are all things created by Hifumi-sama’s profound ideas. I thought it is our fortune to see the light ahead on the path of life, everyone must choose while hesitating over it.” (Origa)

Entering the room from the balcony, Origa quietly sat down on the office’s chair.

“So, are the preparations in order?” (Origa)

“There are no larger problems. All troubles have been concluded within our estimations and are resolved. It’s advancing as planned up until here.” (Caim)

“That’s excellent.” (Origa)

Origa, who’s looking through the documents, lets the pen fly quickly across the papers, signs them and hands them to Caim.

“Well then, in accordance with the first point of the plan, I will head to the capital a second time. Please prepare the escort since I will depart tomorrow morning.” (Origa)

“Certainly!” (Caim)

“Everything is for the sake of granting that gentleman’s desire...”
(Origa)

Once she closes her eyes, Hifumi’s face floats up within her mind.

“I believe you are aware of it, but this is also the “homework” which was assigned to us by Hifumi-sama.” (Origa)

“I’m well aware. I’m convinced that I’m adequately comprehending the intentions of Lord-sama as well. Please, be at ease and leave the matters of Fokalore to us civil officials.” (Caim)

It’s words said in a flat tone without him changing his expression, however Origa understood that there was no lie in them.

“Fufu, it won’t do, if I don’t do my best, too.” (Origa)

Standing up, Origa once again shifted her attention to the hustle and bustle outside.

A large number of people walks at a quick pace in the city, dyed by the setting sun. There's many people heading home, I guess.

“What Hifumi-sama is aiming for is on behalf of the world's prosperity.”
(Origa)



What the knights and soldiers confronted wasn't the beastmen only anymore.

The exchange with the beastmen of the reborn slums is depriving the commoners of Swordland from their reservations.

Although the vigilante corps, which patrols the slum's city, has a grim appearance, they aren't oppressive, like the soldiers patrolling the human's city, at all. There were many occurrences of minor offences and lost property, they dealt with cordially, too.

Even Helen and Reni, who were set up as representatives of the slums little by little, learn from humans pro-actively. Helen ran around as representative of the shopping area and Reni became a reliable existence for many beastmen and humans as point of contact for the human's side.

Seen from the viewpoint of the humans, the appearance of Reni, who was very different from the terrifying image of beastmen, gives a sense of security with her gentle character and triggers a desire to protect her. She gathered a feeling of respect as key person, who built up the beastmen's city by quickly absorbing the human's knowledge as beastgirl.

Such Reni naturally isn't able to completely eliminate her evasive nature towards fighting and combat.

“It will result in a battle with the humans!?” (Reni)

Gengu solemnly nodded to Reni, whose eyes darted about in surprise.

Behind him Hifumi is watching the situation without interrupting the conversation while folding his arms.

“We are already preparing to fight for the sake of protecting this city with the volunteers of the vigilante corps ~ssu. To guard this city with Hifumi-san’s guidance.” (Gengu)

“... Aren’t we able to avoid the battle in some way?” (Reni)

“If it turns into a fight with the humans, the people, who became our friends at great pains, will also become mutual enemies”, Reni shed tears.

“I will keep at it, we got up to this point by everyone doing their best and yet...” (Reni)

“Reni-san... it will be alright. Even if it’s only the beastmen, we will somehow get through it ~ssu. It will be difficult for a while, if the people from the human’s city don’t come here, but they other guys have gotten quite skilled ~ssu.” (Gengu)

Due to Gengu lining up words after words in order to calm Reni, Hifumi says in a cold voice from behind,

“It won’t likely be that easy. You guys take the human stupidity far too lightly.” (Hifumi)

“S-Stupidity, you say... aren’t you a human, too, Hifumi-san.”

“Since I’m well aware of the things I’m not knowledgeable about myself, I’m still on the better side. If you compared it to the ugliness of fellows, who are living by clinging to such things as birth right or status in such dictatorship, it will be a lot better to kill people, who possess a fair amount of ability like me.” (Hifumi)

“Also, putting that aside, since I’m going to depart now, it would be better, if you prepared a large amount of rooms for the humans, who don’t want to be mixed up in the following mayhem”, leaving those words,

Hifumi heads towards the room's exit.

“Umm, where are you going, Hifumi-san?” (Reni)

Hifumi looked over his shoulder due to Reni's question.

“You guys are going to protect this city, right? Rather than such slow-paced battle, I will go enjoy myself over at the human's city since it will be more fun to break that place apart.” (Hifumi)

“See ya”, Hifumi went away.

And, as if changing place, Helen plunged into the room.

Apparently having come by running at full speed, she sits down on the ground right after having seen Reni's face and breathes heavily with a *pant pant*

“Helen, what's wrong?!” (Reni)

“Humans are, a lot of humans are...” (Helen)

“No way, did they already come attacking!?” (Gengu)

Grabbing the clothes of Gengu, who tries to rush out while saying “I can't idle around like this”, Helen shook her head.

“I-It's different.” (Helen)

While tightly clutching his clothes, Helen somehow got her breathing in order and looked at Gengu and Reni in alternation.

“The humans came entering the slums wanting to help out. And in addition to that, there are several tens of them, too!” (Helen)



With the successive affair of beastmen and humans being killed, the residential area of the nobles and rich went on high alert. Soldiers and knights patrolled the whole block, regardless of day and night.

Naturally fear spread amongst the commoners as well, but upon the order of Swordland's upper echelon, the soldiers were very indifferent towards the commoners.

“Why don't you patrol our place!? Wasn't it you soldiers, who came here before although you had no business with us?”

At the entrance to the noble block, a middle-aged man, who's likely the shopkeeper of some store, is yelling at the soldiers.

“With the current state of emergency, the patrol is different from our usual routine. Listen up and go home.”

“If you are some good for nothing once push comes to shove in addition to your bad habit of always taking away merchandise from my store for free, I will have you pay money properly from the next time onwards.”

“That was simply received as your share of gratitude for protecting your guys' safety. This and that have no relation with each other.”

Due to the soldier talking while having a blank facial expression, the man clenched his fists and was on the verge of hitting him, but he had his arms restrained and was dragged away by the other shopkeepers, who rushed over.

“Idiot! At this rate you would get killed by the soldier!”

“That soldier, that soldier has snatched bread from my store almost everyday, despite this...”

Once they returned to the place, where their own stores are at, the man finally burst into tears.

This man as well as the other humans were born and always lived in this town as commoners. Although the group of soldiers behaved in an oppressive manner, it's also true that the harm was small. Because of that, they endured it as long as the soldiers were keeping the public order.

All of them had the same feelings of wanting to weep.

“... Calm down. It's not like it's particularly decided that we will be killed.”

“But, ya know, Won't the criminal then aim as much as possible at the places where the soldiers ain't patrolling?”

A heavy silence falls upon the men.

It's not only their problem. There's their wives and children as well as their cherished stores. Some of them are taking care of their old parents, too. It will be too late once they run into an emergency.

“... Let's rely on the folks from the slums.”

“The group of carpenters, who has built the beastmen's stores, you mean? Certainly, they probably have some physical strength, but...”

“No, let's request guards from the beastmen.”

The subject, proposed in a small voice by a man who's working as butcher, couldn't be accepted right away.

“W-What are you thinking? Do you want to act as if calling for the enemy?”

“That’s right. What will the soldiers say, if they see beastmen loitering around in the city...?”

“We are having such a conversation because those soldiers won’t come here though.”

By no means it was in a loud voice, however the butcher’s words were enough to silence the other men.

“It has been many times that the carpenters have come to buy meat requested by the beastmen. It’s not like they were particularly threatened or deceived to do so. How to call it? Ah, yea, it was a feeling of a friend doing a favour.”

“Which reminds me, there were many such clients at my place as well.”

Once the greengrocer agrees with it, the shopkeeper of the store, which is selling small articles of wooden products and ironware, nods as if he had remembered it, too.

“I’ve gotten completely sick of the human soldiers.”

The butcher, who spoke while looking down, lifted his face and seriousness was reflected in his eyes.

“I will talk with my family and go to the slums to talk about moving there temporarily with my family.”

“Please wait! I will go too!”

Following the butcher, who headed out walking with resolution, the greengrocer also raises his voice and runs after him.

The remaining lot of men look at each other’s faces and knit their brows.

“... I will also, go. Rather than going along with useless humans, it will be a much better way to support the beastmen, if they have a good heart.”

The sobbing baker stood up and walked away.

Discussing it among the remaining men for a while and as result of talking it over together with the the farmers, hunters and carpenters, many commoners, except several people who can’t accept the beastmen no matter what, have decided to request the beastmen for the protection of their families and the patrolling of the city by using the carpenters, who are entering and leaving the slums regularly, as liaisons.



“Aren’t you pathetic? You ended up going completely mad, didn’t you?”

It’s the night in the city, devoid of any people taking a stroll and with even the soldiers doing their rounds missing.

Although you might call it a ghost town, it isn’t odd. The residents of the city have diminished after all. With many requesting help from the slums, those, who remained in the city, are holding their breaths and secluding themselves within their homes.

“But well, I think that this way is beastmen-like.” (Hifumi)

In such dark night alley it was Hifumi pointing at Salgu, who was snarling at him.

Without even holding his katana, he extends his right hand straight at the bearman while having his left hand inserted in his bosom in a state of being unarmed.

“Mad, you say...? I’m protecting the spirit of loving freedom, which ought to be the rightful way of beastmen! What would a human like you know about that!?” (Salgu)

“Freedom, eh?” (Hifumi)

In response to Salgu, who raises his voice into enraged yelling, Hifumi laughs in a natural stance.

“Forcing a freedom that was refused, right? The freedom you are talking about is a freedom pushed as inconvenience onto others, isn’t it? If it’s a freedom of having one’s fill of killing by fellows, who just have the power to force their arrogance onto others, the human country’s side has been plastered all over with it.” (Hifumi)

“In the end you are only rampaging around and crying like a little child because your compulsory make-believe freedom hasn’t been accepted”, Hifumi cuts Salgu with his words.

“Guuoooo!” (Salgu)

Without being even able to return any words anymore, Salgu lowers his body and rushes over using his four limbs. He bore his fangs towards Hifumi’s abdomen.

“Uuh-oh.” (Hifumi)

Hifumi picked up the hem of his hakama with his fingers, twisted his body like a matador, let him go past and kicked the lower leg of Salgu, who went too far, with all his strength.

“Gyan!?” (Salgu)

Salgu, who fell to the ground with the momentum of running, raises a cloud of dust and stands up while bearing the pain in his foot.

“Hey, you.” (Hifumi)

Once again Hifumi points at Salgu.

“There’s a fellow, who resembles you. It’s the guy, who calls himself the king of this country. He is announcing his past and current fighting strength and his surroundings are obeying him. Same as you he is forcing his arrogant freedom with strength.” (Hifumi)

Even while he is talking, Salgu attacks Hifumi.

The attacks of his fangs, which are making sounds as if made out of metal, and the swings of his sharp claws, which look as if they would even cut through iron, are not even remotely close to hitting Hifumi, who is slowly swaying like a willow.

“The freedom, the king is talking about, is about himself being in a position, which enables him to tyrannize the commoners and beastmen. How is that any different from what you are doing?” (Hifumi)

“It’s completely different!” (Salgu)

The fist, swung downward with all the might apparent in a bearman, strikes the ground without hitting Hifumi.

A sound, as if a huge wooden mallet stroke into something, reverberated.

Hifumi made a light thrust at the acupuncture point for the sense of pain, which is located at the outer elbow of Salgu's arm, which was directly stabbed towards the ground.

As expected, even Salgu had to hold his arm due to the arm's soreness similar to turning numb.

“If that's the case, show the proof. Your objective is to liberalize the beastmen, right? If you believe that you want to release the beastmen of the fetters called the human's city by defeating the human's boss, you don't have the time to be rolling around while being covered in dirt at this place, right?” (Hifumi)

Hifumi's finger points towards the castle next.

“He is over there; the one who's obstructing your freedom. He is the main cause of locking the beastmen in the cage called city and forcing them into a human lifestyle to the degree of making them forget the vast world called wastelands. Think, do you really want to fight me here?” (Hifumi)

Salgu glared at Hifumi while rubbing his hurt elbow, but he carefully listened to Hifumi's words.

“... Why are you trying to have me kill the king?” (Salgu)

Hifumi answered “That's simple” to Salgu's inquiry.

“It's because I think that fighting is the beastmen's instinct. I just thought I would give a little push.” (Hifumi)

Salgu, who shook his head with a trembling, claps the fur of his arms to get rid of the dust.

“Pushing to kill a human, you say...? For me your way of thinking and behaviour is incomprehensible. But, I will frankly approve about me fighting because of my instinct. And, the opponent, who I ought to fight,

is definitely the human boss, the king. I intended to go kill the beastmen, who were tamed by humans, and the humans in the king's vicinity, but..." (Salgu)

Salgu stared in the direction of the castle.

"If the one called king or whatever is the true ringleader, I will kill the king first. It doesn't even matter if it's a lie. It will be fine, if I kill a different human, too. If they see my actions and the number of humans decreasing, the beastmen of this city will likely understand it as well." (Salgu)

Before realizing, Salgu's eyes were tinged with a light of calmness. However, the madness, which dwells within his pupils, hasn't abated even a bit. Hifumi, who saw that, breaks into a smile with a delighted expression.

"If you got it, hurry up and go." (Hifumi)

Salgu, who was urged on by Hifumi, ran away towards the castle, even forgetting his pain.

Making sure of that with his own eyes, Hifumi retrieved the kusarigama from his storage.

"Well then... let's go spectate kuma-san's battle, eh?" (Hifumi)

Going into an alley, Hifumi picked up the vents at the hips of a pair of hakama and dashed with a speed as if tearing through the wind.

Passing even Salgu, who runs on the main street, he finally arrives at the noble block ahead.

Hifumi, who ran through while ignoring the soldiers on patrol, stood at a position, where he can watch the castle.

The vast garden, visible on the other side of the gatekeepers through the open gate, is illuminated by bonfires. Knights and behind them, soldiers, are lining up in rows. He knew they would be heading towards the slums

after the speech of the knight, who is standing on a platform while facing them.

Hifumi looks up to the night sky and slowly takes a deep breath. Breathing in the warm air, even though it's night, he experiences the scent of the dry air.

In the meanwhile the knights and soldiers depart from the castle and advance into the direction of the slums.

Without caring about them, Hifumi only confirms that they likely won't bump into Salgu going by their direction.

“Now then, in the castle it's a showdown between the king and the bear. In the slums it's a showdown between the knights and soldiers and the beastmen lot led by a sheep, huh?” (Hifumi) (T/N: Lol ... love the “led by a sheep”)

“And after the conclusion it will be...” imagining that, Hifumi smiles with a broad grin while whirling the upper counterweight around.

“No matter how it turns out, it looks like I will be able to enjoy myself quite a bit.” (Hifumi)

The long night of Swordland for the sake of a single outsider's pleasure began.

Chapter 96: Satisfaction

The contact between the knights and the slums' residents began with conversation.

Several beastmen, who are proud of their strength, are using their own bodies to form a wall obstructing the pathway, which is the entrance to the slums.

“Clear the way, beasts.” (Zebul)

The one speaking in a high-handed manner from atop his horse is Zebul, who was appointed to deal with the beastmen by the king during the audience.

“Even if you hole yourselves in, it won't extend you bastards' life span in the least. Surrender. Rather than losing your lives, you will likely be happier surviving as slaves.” (Zebul)

The humans, who took refuge in the slums, panicked more than the beastmen due to his remarks, which showed that he hadn't any intention at all to talk it over.

Several humans, who noticed the uproar, listened to the speech standing behind the beastmen.

“Please wait! There are humans here as well!”

Coming out from in-between the beastmen, a man frantically waved his arms and advocated their existence.

However, Zebul's reply was indifference.

“The lives of commoners and their likes doesn’t even deserve consideration in front of our noble cause. It’s fine for you to die while regretting your own foolishness of clinging to filthy beastmen.” (Zebul)

“T-That’s because the soldiers didn’t protect us!”

Zebul returned a scornful laughter at the man, who yelled close to wearing out his throat.

“You aren’t worth to be protected, is what I should have said just now though?” (Zebul)

“Such a...”

A single beastman placed their hand on the shoulder of the crestfallen man, who dropped to his knees.

“Be relieved. We will properly protect you.”

“That’s right. We have to show our gratitude to the humans here. In various ways.”

Zebul, who watched the leopard beastman laugh with a giggle, bent his lips in displeasure.

“Beast, don’t use human speech! All hands, draw your swords!” (Zebul)

The soldiers and knights, lining up in rows, draw their swords. Their numbers are probably around 50 in total? Although it might be a magnificent view to watch, you can’t really say that from the standpoint of having to confront them.

Especially the mounted knights holding a longsword, supposed to be swung downwards from atop the horse, have an imposing appearance.

But, the beastmen's side had quite the composure.

“Ooh! Her they come! Here they come!” (Gengu)

The dogman Gengu is also at this place.

Gengu, who exerted the most focussed effort at the time of Hifumi's coaching, stares directly at the human knights and isn't perturbed in any way either.

“Hee. If you compare it to the intimidation of Hifumi-san, those guys aren't even close to a fart!” (Gengu)

The surrounding beastmen also agreed to Gengu's harsh words.

Once you observe them, the knights, who are using horses, are sticking out just because they are leaving the soldiers behind, as according to assumptions.

“Alright! Let's get it done as we were taught!” (Gengu)

“””Yeah!””””

What the beastmen, who motivated themselves, did first was to retreat towards the slums.

The humans, who have been dumbfounded, are carried by the strong beastmen and they retreat orderly.

“Haha! The beasts are scared, it seems.”

“Let's enter the slums and get on with the massacre!”

The knights, who talked big and raised the speed of their horses,

disregard something like the soldiers running after them from behind. They charge directly at the beastmen.

“I will get them first! ... Aaargh!?” (Zebul)

Zebul spurs on his horse, but, being suddenly thrown off balance, he fell due to pitching forward.

In front of Zebul, who was thrown to the front, stands a gigantic tiger beastman.

“Alright, how did you feel being thrown off the horse?”

“Don’t babble! Lowlifes such as incompetent beasts, who can only swing around their arms... are...?” (Zebul)

At the time Zebul stood up and fixed his grip on the sword, the tiger beastmen brandished a 3-m-long log with amazing muscle strength.

“Yea, it’s certainly true that we are incompetents, who can only swing something around. It’s not only the arms though!”

Zebul was slapped into the wall of the avenue by the log. which was swung with full power. Breaking through the wooden wall, he was forcefully removed from the battlefield.

Also, in the meanwhile, the horses of the knights, who have been pressing onwards vigorously, are falling over one after the other and the armoured knights are thrown onto the ground.

“Indeed, this is easy.” (Gengu)

Gengu, who stayed at distance and observed, isn’t able to withstand laughing at how well their plan is working out.

Although you might call it a trap, it's something extremely simple. They only made a large amount of small pitfalls with a depth of around 20 cm along the entranceway to the slums.

The pitfalls' size is at the level that one might ignore it if passing over them on wheels, but if it's the feet of people and horses, those will get stuck.

Moreover, according to Hifumi's thankful forethought of 『It's not likely that they will be immediately able to do such difficult actions like preparing their swords to slash with them』, the beastmen, making use of their physical strength, can wield logs as is. And the powerless beastmen are holding long spears.

Looking at the state of the knights being smashed by logs and pierced by spears from a distance, a longsword can't reach, the following soldiers stop their feet. The narrow entrance to the slums was clogged up with a number of corpses and knights evacuating while raising groans being barely alive.

“Humans get beaten up by human wit. Even as a pun it's harsh.”
(Gengu)

Gengu laughed forcibly.



The king of Swordland, Buell, who can't guess the crisis, the knights have fallen into, in the least, drank a light sake after working up a sweat in his dim bedroom illuminated by candlelight.

On top of the soggy, dishevelled bed a stark naked catwoman has collapsed while gasping.

“Hmm, today's female was quite good. You have my praises.” (Buell)

Savouring the sensation of alcohol pouring down his throat, Buell talks about praising while not even throwing a single glance at the catwoman.

“Hey! Someone bring a stronger sake!” (Buell)

Buell’s very loud voice reverberates.

But, there’s no answer to it.

“What’s wrong!? Isn’t anyone there!?” (Buell)

Once his voice raised in anger, the room’s door finally opened.

However, the one, who entered, is a bearman.

“All humans on this floor were killed. There’s only you left.” (Salgu)

The bearman Salgu, who was smeared in blood, pointed at Buell and bore his fangs.

“Those incompetent guards are... For the king himself to exterminate harmful vermin, it’s necessary to retrain those knights.” (Buell)

Buell drew the large sword, which was leaning horizontally against the bed and pointed it towards Salgu. His only cloth is a single gown, but his impressive figure implicitly shows the level of his military prowess.

“Our family has slain beasts with this sword and established a nation on this desolated soil. It’s fine to boast to the other beastmen, once you dropped to hell, about having been killed by this historical sword.” (Buell)

“The one to die is you. I will free the beastmen, who were imprisoned in the humans’ city.” (Salgu)

“Don’t spout such nonsense, lowlife.” (Buell)

Buell's charge is fast.

Against the sword, which was swung downward head-on, Salgu evaded by twisting his body and thrust out his right paw.

Hitting the hilt of the sword with his sharp claws, he averts its trajectory.

“You are moving fairly well for one with the social standing of a beast.”
(Buell)

The sword, which was aimed at the neck, was restrained by Salgu's arm and stopped. Buell corresponded with a head-butt against the counter-attacking bite.

The sound of bones and flesh colliding continued. Salgu was getting covered in wounds little by little. Buell was also intensely shedding blood from a number of cuts and had sustained bruises here and there.

“I see. It's been a while since I had a tough opponent. But, I will finish it with this.” (Buell)

The judgment Buell made was that Salgu's movements have gradually grown dull and that he was at the peak of fatigue due to having struggled against the defence up to here. So far Buell had repeatedly attacked by brandishing his sword and thus Salgu likely wouldn't be able to deal with intended thrust coming next.

Once I stab the neck, this battle will end.

However, an unexpected hindrance came in-between.

“Nuu!?” (Buell)

Suddenly the catwoman clung to Buell's feet.

“You bitch!” (Buell)

The enraged Buell fiercely kicked the catwoman's head and the woman, having her neck broken, died while slowly slipping down with her strength being lost.

However, that has become a fatal opening for Buell.

“Ooooh!” (Salgu)

The claws of the roaring Salgu pierce into Buell's stomach and deeply penetrated to the level of pushing out the skin of Buell's back.

“Gu... bu...” (Buell)

Throwing up blood, Buell kneels down.

“It's your... loss...” (Salgu)

Just as Buell had foreseen, Salgu stamina was at its limit. If Buell had avoided that one blow, Salgu would have been the one who lost.

Losing strength in his knees, Salgu sat down on the floor and looked at the catwoman, who created this chance by risking her own life.

Facing the dead body with its head being bent the wrong way and its eyes being vacant, Salgu shed tears.

“Sorry... If I had been stronger...” (Salgu)

“Uh-oh. Am I barely in time. Or am I out?”

In the room, where there shouldn't be anyone, the voice of a man besides Salgu resounds.

“W-Who is it?” (Salgu)

“Yoo.” (Hifumi)

Hifumi suddenly turned up at the window, which should be at quite the height due to this part being on the 5th floor.

Having hooked the sickle to the edge of the window, he jumps into the room with nimble movement.

Once he took a fleeting glance at the defeated Buell, he took out a magic potion from within his storage while saying 「He is still breathing」 and sprinkled it over Buell’s wounds with a *splash*

“W-What are you doing...?” (Salgu)

“Mm? After you it’s my turn. Here, you too.” (Hifumi)

Having already opened one bottle, he pours the fluid completely over the sitting Salgu.

“Uwaa... the wounds are?” (Salgu)

At the beginning Salgu was surprised about the sensation of his body, which had been injured by Buell’s sword, recovering in the twinkling of an eye, but he realized that it was the same thing Buell went through beforehand.

“No way!” (Salgu)

“Uuh...” (Buell)

As Salgu had feared, Buell, who should be at death’s door, got up while raising groans and looked down on his body with its healed wounds.

“This is... just what the hell happened?” (Buell)

“You are slow at waking up. Stand up quickly. Your injuries should have already been healed.” (Hifumi)

“Was that your work, bastard?” (Buell)

Buell, who stood up, is stroking his belly while showing the inside of the torn gown.

“It has been completely closed. I don’t know what kind of magic that is, but it certainly is convenient. I shall praise you.” (Buell)

“Yea, whatever.” (Hifumi)

Buell showed irritation due to Hifumi’s nonchalant attitude, however it was Salgu, who raised his voice before Buell.

“What are you thinking? That catwoman risked her life to create an opening and even though I believed I finally killed him!” (Salgu)

“That’s right. It looks like your guys’ fight finished right there. The middle-aged man lost and the bear somehow won by getting help.” (Hifumi)

The two, who had a finger pointed them in turns, glared at Hifumi in tune albeit it being just after them killing each other.

“So, next is my turn. I don’t have a hobby of tormenting a weakened opponent. Thus I just had you recover.” (Hifumi)

“My chivalrous spirit will probably overflow”, Hifumi sneered, but Buell shouted that it wasn’t a laughing matter.

“You bastard! Even if I’m grateful for the healing, what’s with this

attitude in front of the king!?” (Buell)

“Ah yea, about that.” (Hifumi)

Hifumi smiles broadly.

“Being a king, how does that matter? I don’t care about such stuff. I saved your life. Aren’t you thankful for that?” (Hifumi)

“Tsk. You are a lowly man after all. Tell me what you desire.” (Buell)

Due to Buell folding his arms and having an attitude filled with despise, Hifumi looked into his eyes and replied,

“This country.” (Hifumi)

“What!?” (Buell)

“If you are unable to accept, will it better for you to lose your life today after all?” (Hifumi)

“Do you plan to threaten the king!?” (Buell)

Grasping his sword, Buell tried to strike with his sword aiming at Hifumi’s neck.

However, just by lowering his waist slightly, that sword cuts empty space.

“Oh, yes! You can fight against me, if you dislike it. It’s fine for you both to go at it at the same time. I climbed all the way up to this place because I wanted to do just that.” (Hifumi)

At the moment Hifumi finished his speech, Salgu as well as Buell attacked Hifumi striving to be first to hit him.

Salgu aims his claws at the breast of Hifumi. Buell’s sword heads towards his throat. Both of them lunge at him.

“How nice. That’s great.” (Hifumi)

Aiming at Hifumi, who stepped sideways, Salgu tried to pierce him with his fangs while drawing back his arm.

“You aren’t careful enough when you open your snout.” (Hifumi)

The tip of the suntetsu, grasped in Hifumi’s hand, hit the sharpened fangs from the front.

Jumping over Salgu, who squatted down in pain when a pair of his fangs broke, Buell swung his sword down from an overhead position.

“Die!” (Buell)

The sword, which has weight, approached with quite the velocity.

Hifumi, who judged that he would be cut, even if put up the chain, seized Buell’s arm by stretching out his left hand and hurled away Buell with the momentum of slashing as is.

“Oouuh!?” (Buell)

Being surprised by his first experience of being thrown, Buell was awkwardly slapped onto the ground.

Turning around, Hifumi saw the figure of Salgu, who has started to attack in the act of standing up from his crouching posture.

The pointed thrust of using his entire body as spring barely tore open Hifumi’s cheek with a shallow cut.

“You did well.” (Hifumi)

Grabbing the extended arm and arresting it, he pins down Salgu to the floor by pressing the shoulder and elbow joints.

Hifumi mercilessly swings down his sickle at Salgu's nape of the neck.

(It's the end, huh...? Sorry, Olra...) (Salgu)

At the final moment Salgu, who recalled the shape of his beloved daughter, fell asleep to never wake up for eternity again. Please, I hope that she can survive the wastelands together with those tiger children.

"... Aren't you on the humans' side, if you kill a beastman? Why are you trying to kill me as well?" (Buell)

Buell, who hit his back, supports his trembling body with his sword and stands up.

"I'm on neither side." (Hifumi)

Storing away the kusarigama, which he had wiped clean of blood, Hifumi, who became unarmed, took a stance of having his right hand and his right leg in front.

"I'm just roaming this world in the pursuit of combat." (Hifumi)

"You lunatic..." (Buell)

Buell, who was finally able to set up his sword by shouldering it, held a feeling of respect and terror towards the enemy standing in front of him with an abnormal presence while being an unarmed opponent.

If this man was my own subordinate, it might also be possible to expand the nation by crushing the wastelands, he even thought.

"Uuoooo!" (Buell)

The one blow of Buell, who raised a war cry, was an honest strike without any tricks.

The fast and heavy hit might have been able to injure Hifumi, if Buell had been in his best condition.

At the moment Hifumi grabbed his arm just as before, Buell lowered his waist in order to prevent being thrown.

However, Hifumi shows how to even deal with that.

Ceasing to grab the arm, he plunged into Buell's bosom and scooped up both legs of his opponent with both arms.

Buell, who was tossed onto his back unlike before, bangs the back of his head against the floor and tries to stand up in a hurry, but his knees have no strength.

At the point when he stood up with the support of his sword, his cervical vertebrae was twisted by Hifumi's hand and broke.

In the bedroom, filled with three fallen corpses, Hifumi touched the wound on his cheek, caused by Salgu, and licked his own blood sticking to his finger.

“I have to increase the number of fellows, who are able to do at least this much.” (Hifumi)

Even while grumbling, Hifumi didn't suppress the laughter rising from the bottom of his abdomen due to the excitement of having received a wound after a long time.

Chapter 97: Hook In Mouth

Due to someone stuttering 「F-Fall back!」, the soldiers, in whose presence the gut-wrenching scene of the knights getting completely crushed took place, escaped from the battlefield with each of them wrestling to be first to get away.

Those words were a petition, released by a mere soldier as he succumbed to panic, but there's no one caring about that. By clinging to the lure called retreat, they chose to run away from this place without caring about their responsibilities.

Watching the soldiers' ranks falling apart in their escape, scattering all over, without any of their orderly fortitude from before the battle, the beastmen shouted in exultation.

“Alright, it went well!”

However, different to the beastmen, who were all smiles, the humans' reactions were inclining towards bewilderment.

Welcoming the beastmen, who returned to the slums, with cheers, the beastmen, waiting for their return, received them warmly albeit slightly roughly. However, the humans came together and murmured about their anxieties from now on.

“I-Is it alright...?”

Even the man, who was not long ago saved by being carried away by a beastman, said that while drenched in sweat.

“The knights were killed... won't we be killed by the other knights once we return to the city?”

“If we get blamed by the soldiers, our lives will already...”

Two small beastgirls push their way through the slums' beastmen and walk up to the panicking humans.

It's Helen and Reni.

“So, how about living here?” (Reni)

The humans didn't know for a moment what to say to the suggestion provided by Reni without hesitation.

“Though there are many various things, you taught me, I want to thank you for, there are still houses that need repairs. There's plenty things left to do.” (Reni)

“That's right, isn't it? There are also many things we still don't understand, if it's only us beastmen.” (Helen)

Helen agrees with Reni's suggestion, too. The beastmen in the surroundings are showing a supportive attitude as well.

“But, this place is the city of beastmen...”

Reni was puzzled over a perplexed male human.

“... Is there any difference?” (Reni)

“Ha?”

Seeing that their talk isn't meshing, Helen laughed with her rabbit ears moving with a *ping ping* (T/N: pico pico)

“You humans probably look at the beastmen as one pack, but in the wastelands there’s nothing like that. Me and Reni might get attacked by tigers and wolves too, if we go into the wastelands.” (Helen)

“No one will mind the humans blending in at this point when we are living by mixing with other races anyway”, is what Helen says.

Due to those words not only the humans, but also the beastmen looked at each other.

The ones who are currently at this location are humans, rabbits, sheep, leopards, tigers, dogs, wolves, *etc.* If one were to talk about differences, there would be no end to mismatching appearances and customs.

“Since this place seems to be “A heterogeneous place different from the humans’ and beastmen’s society” going by Hifumi-san’s words, isn’t it fine for everyone to join as long as they aren’t bad people?” (Reni)

“Right?” Once Reni asked for confirmation from her, Helen showed a wry smile and nodded.

“There are humans, who got used to beastmen, and beastmen, who got used to humans. I think it’s just as that man says. However, I don’t believe it’s something to be decided by Reni and me.” (Helen)

“No, isn’t it fine?” (Gengu)

From among the group of beastmen, Gengu stuck out his face with its long dogman-like nose.

“Because Helen-san and Reni-san are the representatives of this city in name and reality at present, no one will complain, if it’s okay with the two of you ~ssu.” (Gengu)

Being struck by Gengu’s speech, Helen and Reni turn around their heads in a circle and see all the beastmen in the vicinity nodding with smiles.

Showing a smiling face close to bursting, Reni faced the humans.

“Since it’s as you’ve heard, this city will welcome humans, too.” (Reni)

“T-Thank you...?”

“H-However, the knights and soldiers won’t stay silent about this.”

“You can’t absolutely call this a safe place to live in”, the humans were in a state of being unable to calm down yet, but Reni gently talked to them in order to have them regain their presence of mind.

And due to what she said next, the beastmen at this place were lost for words.

“Since Hifumi-san should have gone to the castle, it will probably work out somehow, won’t it?” (Reni)

“H-Hifumi-san, you say?”

The humans don’t properly know about Hifumi, who didn’t show his face unless to give instructions to Helen and Reni.

However, the beastmen, who encountered him in these few days, especially the bunch of the vigilante corps, which participated in the training, are showing pale faces, hard to recognize due to their fur.

The humans, who noticed their state, only sensed that something terrible was going on.

“R-Reni-san, you said that Hifumi-san has gone to the human city, but why is he headed for the palace, I wonder ~ssu?” (Gengu)

“Because he told me before that it’s necessary to go to the castle and talk with the king, he is probably now...” (Reni)

The beastmen, who dropped their shoulders while sighing, believed that the strife with the humans will continue for a long time to come yet, but they sighed as it seems to have become a needless worry.

“W-What’s this about?”

“It’s just as you’ve heard.”

A single tigerman answered to a human, who doesn’t comprehend.

“The problem is that there’s no way for Hifumi-san to just return after “talking.””

“Good grief. The ones welcoming the bunch of soldiers, which ran home, won’t just be the surviving soldiers.”

“Well, then there won’t be any battles for a while.”

With these words signalling the breakup, the beastmen headed home while chatting somewhat excitedly about the battle some time ago.

Helen calls out to the humans, who are left behind overcome with surprise, while being bashful.

“Oh well, since we have a place for you to sleep, follow me.” (Helen)

“There’s food as well”, being told that, the humans, who began to feel the emptiness in their stomachs for the first time, came to Reni and went with her.

The slums’ battle came to a conclusion far quicker than anyone expected.



The number of humans within the castle, who were killed until Salgu

finally arrived at the king's chamber, had been more than 30. The count is mostly compromised of soldiers and knights, who were killed protecting the royal chambers at night.

“T-This is...!”

For the sake of cleaning up the king's night fun with the beastwoman, the soldiers head towards the bedroom. Given that it was the king's habit to restfully sleep by himself after returning the beastwomen to the prison, the soldiers on duty show up in the centre of the castle at the time, which was set as night-time, but what they found there wasn't the usual scenery.

The halls are littered with corpses, which had their heads torn off or holes ripped into their bellies.

All of them were showing an expression of anguish while grasping their weapons tightly.

“It's a disaster! There's an intruder!”

While shouting that, the two soldiers leaped into the king's bedroom in a state of emergency.

“Uh...”

What they discovered inside are three corpses.

The catwoman, who was taken out of the prison on behalf of the king, the king, who is their lord, and a giant bearman, they don't remember.

The catwoman's head is twisted in an impossible direction. They understand at a glance that the king's neck has been broken in the same way, too. The bearman is shedding a great amount of blood from parts of the head and his neck has been torn to pieces apparently sliced up by an edged tool.

“W-What shall we do?”

Because of the completely unforeseen situation, the soldier, who can't decide, addresses his colleague.

“Like I would know...”

Even his colleague doesn't know what would be good to do.

And from outside they can hear the voices of a crowd drawing near.

“Looks like the folks, who went to the slums, came back... mmh?”

The soldier, who observed the circumstances from the bedroom's window, stares at the approaching group and screamed in a hysteric voice.

“They are recklessly running this way. The knights can't be seen anywhere either...”

“Move away.”

The colleague, who confirmed the situation outside the window after pushing his comrade away, perceived the soldiers, who have desperately come escaping to the castle, relying on the lights of torches with his eyes.

The soldier, who looked at that for a short while, hurriedly removes the armour of the upper half of his body causing him to be in a state of only wearing the linen cloth below.

“What are you doing?”

“Running away.”

“Haa?”

“Those guys have likely run away once the knights were done in. I looked at their expressions.”

As the lower leg part doesn't want to come off readily, he cuts the leather belt with the knife, which was affixed to his hips.

“Look at the situation. It's plain as day that the king and the beastman simultaneously killed each other, right? Besides, there's also the premature withdrawal from the slums. They were probably easily defeated by the beastmen.”

The soldier, who lightened down his weight, hung the fixed sword belt at his waist with only his longsword and wallet.

“Well then...”

“If you stay here as is, you will be killed by the beastmen, who are chasing the assault unit, which attacked the slums.”

“... I-I will go too!”

Taking off the armour in a rush, the soldier accompanied his comrade and left the king's bedroom behind.

Hifumi appeared from the window in the room, with no one being there.

Hooking the kusarigama at a part of the wall, Hifumi, who hang onto it by grasping the counterweight, turns around and looks at the soldiers,

who came scurrying home.

“If you watch properly, you will probably grasp that they aren’t chased by beastmen.” (Hifumi)

Even while judging the decision to escape as not bad, he complained that their observation wasn’t sufficient.

“Well, it’s fine. The country’s chains came off.” (Hifumi)

He looks at the king’s corpse.

His expression of rage and agony is a sublime comment.

“This fellow’s existence was too large. He will leave just as much of a hole, once he disappears. If the king had survived, the soldiers probably wouldn’t have escaped either.” (Hifumi)

The rest is the job of Reni’s group, with that Hifumi left the castle behind.

What remained within the castle is only a large amount of corpses and the live-in servants, who were sleeping without realizing anything.

And, discovering the tragic scene due to a soldier, who went to report to the king after escaping safely, the castle fell into chaos.



Zebul was blown away by a single hit with a log when he charged as vanguard in the assault on the slums, but he survived while being buried under the rubble within a deserted house.

“Guuh... by no means, to be hit by a log...” (Zebul)

The chest part of his metallic armour has caved in and it's in a state of being a total loss no matter how you look at it as the joints are bent.

“Anyhow, I didn't think that the beastmen would build a city. Oh well, it's fine.” (Zebul)

Zebul's face transforms while talking.

Growing sharp fangs in his mouth, his face turns into a dark green. Coupled with a slender face, his ears become pointed. He's just like an elf from fairy-tales.

“The plan to have the humans and beastmen go against each other didn't go well. There's no necessity to take the shape a noble of this country anymore either.” (Zebul)

“Sorry. That can't be allowed to pass.”

He intended to speak to himself, however Zebul, who was suddenly called out by someone, rolled over with a speed, one wouldn't expect of someone injured, and picked up his sword.

“Who's there?” (Zebul)

“You don't have to worry about me. Rather than that, can you tell me a little bit more details about the “humans and beastmen go against each other” part, you talked about just now?”

The one who smoothly appeared from within the darkness was Hifumi.

As he was making way through the slums' entrance, which was packed with corpses of knights, in order to return to his hideout, he sensed a presence in a deserted house and decided to have a look.

“You have long ears. An elf, huh?” (Hifumi)

“Besides, you look unwell”, due to Hifumi tilting his head to the side, Zebul, who prepared his sword warily, spit out,

“Don’t lump me together with such living dolls. I’m of the race which is called demon race by the humans. Putting that aside, who the hell are you, bastard? You seem to be different from the bunch that was together with the beastmen, but...” (Zebul)

While talking, Zebul prepared his magic.

The man in front of my eyes is dangerous, is what his senses are screaming at him. For Zebul, whose speciality lies with shape-shifting and who doesn’t have much of confidence in his combat prowess, it will be tough to directly compete by sword, he judged.

“I’m...” (Hifumi)

The instant Hifumi opened his mouth, Zebul pretended to raise the sword overhead and quickly stretched out his right hand in front of him.

“Thunderbolt! ... Haa?” (Zebul)

Releasing his prided thunder magic, Zebul was certain of his victory, however the thunder travelled towards the suntetsu, that was thrown out from Hifumi’s chest, and hit that instead.

Faster than the suntetsu, which became burnt black, hitting the ground, both of Zebul’s legs were scythed down by the katana, released with a nukiuchi.

“Aaaaaaaah!” (Zebul)

Zebul, who had anything below his knees taken away by a single stroke, fell on his backside.

As his face distorted in pain, Zebul throws the sword in his left hand, but it was swallowed up by the darkness magic cast by Hifumi.

“Demon, eh?” (Hifumi)

Hifumi placed his foot on top of Zebul’s belly.

Having lost his sword and both his legs, Zebul, whose body was pushed onto the ground, has a red face filled with anger.

“You are quite the lively one.” (Hifumi)

Has he also the trait to dull his sense of pain or such? Hifumi looked down on Zebul.

“So, let’s hear the answer to the previous question?” (Hifumi)

“Bastard, no matter what you fucker do, it’s too late. Swordland’s beastmen will likely reach the point of pro-actively clashing with the humans. You can’t stop the dwindling of humans in this country anymore.” (Zebul)

“Ah, that’s actually fine with me.” (Hifumi)

Zebul opened his eyes widely due to Hifumi’s reply.

“Humans and beastmen are going to oppose each other. That’s very nice. It was your guys’ doing that the soldiers and knights hated the beastmen profusely, wasn’t it? Thanks to that, it became very easy for me to do my things.” (Hifumi)

Hifumi felt a doubt. Although the soldiers and knights, including the king, have hated the beastmen abnormally, they expressly approved the existence of the slums. It didn’t make sense for the king to use beastwoman for sex either.

“This is likely very recent. You aimed at beastmen ostracism by actively inciting it.” (Hifumi)

That was very convenient for Hifumi. The antipathy was still limited to the people close to the king. The commoners, who still haven't had those values drummed into them, accepted the beastmen.

“With this the 3 human powers, the human city, the wastelands' beastmen and the slums' beastmen drifted apart. If the king was killed, the nobles wouldn't accept the beastmen. The wastelands' beastmen naturally won't participate in a city, which lies in the humans' country. Being caught in-between, the pipsqueaks (T/N: chibi-tachi), running a mixed area, will likely be driven out by the administration and defence forces.” (Hifumi)

“Bastard, despite being a human yourself, you are leading the humans into peril.” (Zebul)

Hifumi nods toward the enraged Zebul.

“2 groups are no good. If it doesn't become a 3-way-struggle, they won't use their brains to strategize and defend themselves. There won't be any scheming in battles either. That's because it would be possible for contact people to come and go. The force, including the population, will probably continue to fluctuate from now on.” (Hifumi)

“They will have to use their heads in order to survive”, Hifumi nods in satisfaction.

“Y-You are mad... For the sake of the battle with the humans to become advantageous for us demons, we instigated the confrontation between humans and beastmen, however... to actually be used by a human...” (Zebul)

“I have put you through trouble. Teach me your guys' whereabouts since I will report to your superior.” (Hifumi)

Although displaying hesitation, Zebul obediently answered,

“It's deep within the elves' forest. There you will find our demon races'

country. If you get carried away for just having killed me, you will suffer hell there.” (Zebul)

“Is that so? I’m looking forward to it.” (Hifumi)

With a small sound, Hifumi’s katana beheaded Zebul.

Chapter 98: In A World Like This

“It’s not like it will go that well, right?” (Hifumi)

“Uuh...” (Reni)

Being easily denied, Reni dropped her shoulders in disappointment.

Getting plenty of sleep in the hut, he has been using as his personal hideout, Hifumi enjoyed the refreshing sensation of having slept and the satisfying feeling of having killed his enemies while he took a late breakfast in a restaurant managed by beastmen.

The ones who arrived there are the slums’ representative, Reni, and the vice-representative, Helen, who had these posts approved by the beastmen.

“However, even if you disagree, it’s a fact that various beastmen are living together in the slums, isn’t it?” (Helen)

“That’s right. But, if you don’t realize that this can be called an odd situation, the conversation won’t make any progress.” (Hifumi)

Reni’s suggestion was to persuade the wastelands’ beastmen and to expand the scale of the slums.

Although the king was defeated and the knights suffered quite a loss in numbers, the slums’ beastmen city, whose overall numerical disadvantage can’t be denied, will be in continuous danger from now on as well.

In spite of barely continuing the exchange with the commoner’s area, even if it’s just for now, it’s easy to imagine that a debate over the subjugation of the beastmen would gush forth centred around the new king and the nobles, once the humans were able to reorganize the castle’s matters.

As for Reni, it was a reasonable suggestion, which gathered the rivalling

powers and kept them in balance, while pushing the preparations of the defences, made up of a fixed number of people, forward until then.

Hifumi downright denied it.

“You guys, did you forget why you were living by sneakily moving from one shade of a tree to the next in the wastelands?” (Hifumi)

“Ah...” (Helen)

“B-But, if it’s here, we can obtain food regularly and there’s a location to live as well.” (Reni)

It was Reni, who tries to somehow object him, but Hifumi, who is stuffing his swelling mouth with vegetable leaves, similar to lettuce, answered while being unimpressed,

“Are beastmen, who don’t know anything about that, simple idiots, who will believe you after they listened to your words?” (Hifumi)

“If they are able to actually see it...” (Reni)

“Will fellows, who don’t believe unless they see it with their own eyes, enter a city, where there are humans, just because they were invited to do so?” (Hifumi)

“Uuh...” (Reni)

Getting her suggestion completely crushed, Reni tightly grasped her hands, which were on top of her knees, becoming teary eyed.

While drinking an after-meal black tea, Hifumi, without looking at Reni’s state, gazed at the slums’ main street outside the restaurant, where beastmen and humans are going back and forth.

The ratio of armed beastmen is somewhat high. I guess they increased the numbers of the vigilante corps going on patrol.

“Even if you leave it as it is, the number of humans and beastmen will increase, if it’s easy to live in this city, right? You will be able to raise the

number of fellows coming and going between this city and the wastelands. If beastmen create fields outside, there will also be fellows, who get curious and come to talk, right?” (Hifumi)

Drinking up the black tea, Hifumi, who observed Helen and Reni, muttered in a bored manner.

“It’s half-baked, however you have stolen a part of the country and created a new place. The future depends on you guys. “Take the Nation” isn’t only about stealing and fighting. It’s also about becoming big and producing value. There’s money to protect the country. There are people. There is organization.” (Hifumi)

He spins around the empty wooden cup.

“As you were able to obtain a vessel, you have to create its contents now, that’s the point.” (Hifumi)

Standing up and heading towards outside the restaurant, Hifumi looks over his shoulders and laughs.

“Well then, do your best in the future.” (Hifumi)

“Wait a bit! Isn’t it fine for you to teach us various things for a bit longer!?” (Helen)

Helen, who rushed over with a force at the level of crashing her body into Hifumi, folds her ears and looks up to him.

“We still don’t understand anything!” (Helen)

“You know, rabbit-chan*.” (T/N: usa-kko ... would be shortened rabbit (usagi) and child (ko) aka rab child? Sounds weird, no?)

Due to Hifumi grabbing her ears and bringing his face so close to hers that it was almost touching, Helen became silent while her face got

spontaneously red.

“Don’t learn anything and everything from people. Observe with your own eyes. As you have big ears, listen well to what other guys are talking about. If you got a brain, which was able to ponder how to run away, it’s probably capable of thinking how to survive as well, right?” (Hifumi)

Hifumi, who released his hands, walked care-freely towards the highway while waving with his hand.

“I’m an irregular in this city. I have also told the lot, who I bought as slaves, to do what they like. This place isn’t the city of beastmen and it isn’t the city of humans either. It’s “your city.” Think about what’s the best thing to do, or no, rather what you want to do.” (Hifumi)

“Do what you like. Although you will have to struggle in the future world, you will loose out, if you don’t enjoy it”, with those words Hifumi vanished into the clattering of the city.

“... He’s gone.” (Helen)

“”Our city”, huh...? Hey, Helen.” (Reni)

“What?” (Helen)

Helen, who looked at her best friend with a worrying face saying “Were you influenced in a strange way again?”, looked at Reni laughing and opening her mouth widely in an unusual manner.

“What’s so funny?” (Helen)

“Well, weren’t we told by Hifumi-san to enjoy it? Laughing like Hifumi-san and trying to do what we like, haven’t we become good at that before we realized?” (Reni)

Helen tried to say something, but looking at Reni laughing with a “Wahaha” as if she’s enjoying it, she judged it to be better to let her do what she wants.

“Oh well. I will do what I like too, I guess? Although there’s a pile of problems ahead, it will be endless, if I worry about them.” (Helen)

The growth of the slums’ city, managed by amateurs, had still only begun.



At the time Origa once gain showed up in the capital, Imeraria was still in the middle of hesitating.

If she noticed that they discovered a sealing spell and not a return spell, at worst Origa might hinder Imeraria and Adol in some way or resort to force, if she’s prone to it.

(For me she’s an opponent that I don’t want to provoke overly much, but...) (Imeraria)

That doesn’t mean that she decided to use the sealing spell yet.

She is in a state, where she doesn’t know whether it’s valid to be used against Hifumi, but to say that she will seal him in this world without returning him to his original world; she can’t think of that as anything but being the worst act against Hifumi, who was summoned into this world by her, who is also the perpetrator.

However...

“If that keeps the nation alive, I have the duty to make that choice.” (Imeraria)

Being notified about Origa’s arrival by the voice of a maid, she replies that she’s allowed to enter the room.

The figure of Origa, who comes entering while making only graceful and

quiet heel sounds, gives a mysterious impression as if she had received the education of a noble's daughter in comparison to before.

With her appearance of wearing a light blue dress with a design, that approached the dress from before, she is clad in a short mantle, similar to a cape, which has a sense of freshness to it.

“Please excuse me for not contacting you for a while, Your Majesty.”
(Origa)

Pinching the hem of her dress and performing an elegant curtsy, Origa sat down on the sofa, which was offered to her by Imeraria.

Her form of sitting down and arranging her knees was dignified and had composure, even seen from Imeraria's point of view as royalty. She has heard that there are people, who make blatant, abusive remarks about Origa, who was a slave, among the gossipy nobles, however she can only think that Origa's side is behaving more noble-like than them.

“Origa-san, there are some things we have to talk about.” (Imeraria)

“Yes, it's about the the magic, which will seal my husband, Hifumi-sama.” (Origa)

Due to Origa dropping a bombshell while smiling cheerfully, Imeraria's mouth is flapping open and closed.

“Your Majesty, you should practise hiding your expression a bit more. Someone like my husband acted in a realistic manner, even going as far as injuring himself...” (Origa)

“A-Aren't you accepting it too easily, Origa-san?” (Imeraria)

“Accept what?” (Origa)

Due to Origa asking her a question in return while being displeased to be interrupted in her precious boasting, Imeraria, who got her breathing in order, asked while sweating,

“That is, the spell to seal him... you know?” (Imeraria)

“Ara, I thought you had already been told by the prime minister.”
(Origa)

“... How much do you know about it?” (Imeraria)

“I think it’s as much as discovering a sealing spell, which is ancient magic. So, which direction is Your Majesty’s heart taking? I want to hear that from you today.” (Origa)

Origa, who slightly wetted her throat with the prepared black tea, is gazing at Imeraria, who’s lost for words once again.

“My husband wishes for Your Majesty to lead the country “without relying on Hifumi-sama in the nation building,” no matter what methods you have to use.” (Origa)

“However, won’t this count as being hostile towards Hifumi-sama?”
(Imeraria)

“Are you scared?” (Origa)

Origa’s green pupils look directly at Imeraria. Imeraria can’t calm down as she is feeling as if Hifumi himself is looking at her from within those eyes.

However, fixing her sitting posture as queen, she directly returns the look.

“I’m always scared. However, if it’s something beneficial for this country and if it’s possible to realize it, I won’t avoid choosing that as

sovereign. I'm not in a position, where I can decide everything following my own feelings." (Imeraria)

They stared at each other for a while, but unable to stand it, Origa burst into laughter.

"Fufufu... I heard a nice answer. You will even fight a strong enemy for the sake of your people and for the sake of your country. However, you won't do the impossible. Truly wonderful." (Origa)

Origa, who cleared her throat forcefully with a cough, erases her smile and shows a serious expression. She spoke to Imeraria as if slowly chewing on her words,

"That's certainly Hifumi-sama's desire. Not in the meaning of fighting strength, but becoming strong by scheming in your mind. That gentleman has always observed your growth. It's to a degree that I feel jealous." (Origa)

That's probably not a joke. Although he's a man, who is a husband and who has a lover, he has been watching over the growth of a woman of the same generation.

"That's why I told you that I would cooperate with you." (Origa)

Origa stroke her right arm.

"Your Majesty, me and the people, who move this country, for the sake of proving that we can walk strongly without needing something like a hero or brave anymore, will deliberately fight with Hifumi-sama... although it's to this extent, it's that gentleman's wish." (Origa)

"Such a... Origa-san, is that fine with you?" (Imeraria)

"Of course." (Origa)

Origa replied in no time.

“If it pleases Hifumi-sama, I will do anything. Besides, there’s also something I’m desiring.” (Origa)

Letting out a giggle, Origa seems to be lovely as appropriate for her age. Her impish smile hasn’t a hint of guilt feeling either.

“I will be able to spend the same time as the person I love for eternity.” (Origa)

“T-That is, in other words...” (Imeraria)

“After I have firmly seized Hifumi-sama, I want to be included in the seal, is what I’m saying.” (Origa)

Imeraria felt dizziness befalling her.



In the castle of Swordland it has turned into a dispute over who should become the successor of the several children of the king. At one part it went even as far as turning into a bloodshed between fellow nobles.

King Buell, who had a perfectly healthy body, hasn’t left something close to a testament behind at all. It’s not like he particularly cherished one of his 5 wives. Mostly venting out on beastmen partners, he had a style of neglecting to the degree that he even rarely called out to the 3 princes.

Since it wasn’t like any of the princes was especially outstanding in military prowess, it naturally turned into a factional dispute between fellow nobles, who backed one of them. Even within the castle there are days where you can see blood.

With a part of the wealthy also moving to the slums in fear of being mixed up in the chaos, it appeared that putting the humans’ system in order would still take quite a while.

“How foolish.” (Hifumi)

“It would have been better, if I had beat up the entire castle altogether, if it was to turn into something like this”, Hifumi, who heard the rumours about the area, where the humans live, sighed.

I believed they would progress faster into an aggressive stance towards hostile powers, if I advanced the story in a more drastic manner since it's an absolute monarchy, but they disappointed me more than I expected.

In the first place, because there's an extension in preparing the slums' defensive stance to that extent, they might be able to properly oppose the balance as war potential.

While it has taken the anticipated shape, Hifumi regretted it a bit.

“It's no good to leave things to others. It will be inevitable to pile up stress.” (Hifumi)

“Ara, master.”

It was a rabbitwoman, who called out to Hifumi, who returned to the slums while grumbling. Being one of the slaves, Hifumi had bought in one go, it's the person, who was sitting together with Reni and Helen while they were studying in the dining room.

“Is your condition bad in some way?”

“Ah, you, eh? It's unnecessary to call me master. You guys are already free.” (Hifumi)

“Well, then it's my freedom to call you master.”

As she was retorting without hesitation, Hifumi returned “Do as you wish.”

“On that subject, do you know of the forest, where the elves live?”
(Hifumi)

“Yes, I was told to not get too close to it, even in the settlement, I lived at before.”

Hifumi tilted his head to the side due to the rabbitwoman’s answer.

“To not get close? Is there antagonism between elves and beastmen?”
(Hifumi)

“Rather than calling it antagonism, how to say it...? The elves don’t leave the forest, but in exchange they don’t allow people to enter the forest. They will come attacking without caring whether it’s humans or beastmen.”

While she talks with a troubled face saying “Though I’m not able to explain it properly,” her sole long ear is jolting with a *ping ping* (T/N: pico pico)

“Anyway, since it looks like they aren’t mingling with other races or such at all, I’m not too sure on the details. Although I’ve been told that the demon race’s dwelling is deeper into the forest, I’ve heard that some demons occasionally come out and fight against the humans’ country or kill beastmen, however...”

“Hmm...” (Hifumi)

“A belligerent bunch, eh?”, Hifumi, who mutters that, is lifting the edges of his mouth without realizing. If I remember correctly, even Zebul

of the demon race, who pretended to be a knight, said something quite provocative, he recalled.

“It’s pointless to stay in Swordland at this rate... alright. Although I believed it to happen sooner or later, let’s head out right away.” (Hifumi)

“Where do you plan to go?”

“I’m going to check out the elves and demons for a bit.” (Hifumi)

Passing an excessive amount of money to the rabbitwoman and entrusting the horse to her since he will leave for a while, Hifumi left Swordland walking as if he is going to hit a store in the neighbourhood.

The rabbitwoman, who was left behind, felt close to fainting while watching Hifumi’s back, which grew more and more distant, wondering how she should explain it to everyone.